



## IBM Cognos Series 7 Configuration Manager User Guide

## Product Information

This document applies to IBM Cognos Series 7 Configuration Manager Version 7.5 and may also apply to subsequent releases. To check for newer versions of this document, visit the IBM Cognos Information Centers (<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/cogic/v1r0m0/index.jsp>).

## Copyright

Licensed Materials - Property of IBM

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2002, 2010.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

IBM, the IBM logo, ibm.com, PowerPlay, Impromptu, and Cognos are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at [www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml](http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml).

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

---

# Table of Contents

---

Introduction	13
Chapter 1: Configuration Manager	15
Configuring IBM Cognos Components	16
Configuring IBM Cognos Server Groups	16
Server Groups	16
Chapter 2: The Windows Graphical User Interface	19
Configuring IBM Cognos Components	19
Components Tab	19
Changing Configuration Values	21
Open the Current Configuration	21
Open a Configuration Specification File	22
Create a New Configuration	22
Change Between Standard and Advanced Views	23
Start the Configuration Wizard	23
Find a Property Name	23
Change a Property Value	24
Revert to a Saved Configuration	25
Set Selected Items to the Default Values	25
Validate Changes	25
Find the Source of an Error	26
Generate a Configuration Report	27
Configuring Your Own Computer	27
Apply Changes	27
Start Your IBM Cognos Services	28
Stop All IBM Cognos Services	28
Identify the Computer	29
Save a Configuration in a File	29
Export a Configuration to a Script	30
Exit Configuration Manager	30
Transfer the Configuration Files to Another Computer	31
Unattended Installations	31
Configuring IBM Cognos Server Groups	31
Server Configuration Tab	31
Create a Server Group	32
Add a Server to an Existing Server Group	33
Encrypt a Server Configuration File	34
Create a Server Configuration File	35
Import a Server Configuration File	36
Chapter 3: The Command Line Interface	39
Interactive Mode	39
UNIX Man Page	40
Command Line Help	40

Run Environment Scripts	40
Command Line Options at Startup	41
Navigate the Configuration Object Hierarchy	42
Commands	44
Apply Command	47
Create Command	48
Delete Command	48
Describe Command	49
Encrypt Command	50
Errors Command	51
Exit Command	51
Find Command	51
FindNext Command	53
GetPreferences Command	54
GoToLink Command	55
List Command	56
New Command	57
ObtainComputer Command	58
OpenCurrent Command	59
OpenFile Command	59
Report Command	60
RestoreLink Command	61
Results Command	62
RevertSaved Command	63
Save Command	64
Script command	65
Select Command	66
Set Command	66
SetDefault Command	67
SetPreferences Command	69
Specify Command	69
Start Command	70
Stop Command	71
Upgrade Command	72
Use Command	73
Validate Command	73
Wizard Command	74
Chapter 4: Common Configuration Tasks	75
Configure Security	75
Configure a Directory Server	75
Specify an Authentication Source	82
Configuring Web Authentication	85
Configuring a Distributed Server Environment	86
Specify Component Locations	87
Managing the Server Configuration File	90
Adding Servers to Existing IBM Cognos Server Groups	97
Configuration Settings for PowerPlay Enterprise Server	98
Configuration Settings for Impromptu Web Reports	98

Configuration Settings for IBM Cognos Visualizer Server	99
Configuration Settings for Upfront	100
Configuration Settings for an Access Manager Server	100
Configuring Web Aliases	100
Configuration Locations for Web Aliases	101
Specify Non-default Web Alias Names for New Installations	103
Change Web Aliases for an Existing Installation	103
Configuring Mixed Version Environments	104
Specify Unique Port Numbers	105
Configure Contributor OLAP Data Access for IBM Cognos PowerPlay	105
Select Compatible Security	106
Manage Configuration Files	106
Manage the Access Manager Server	107
Configure Web Aliases for Mixed Version and Multiple Instance Installations	108
Manage ObjectStore in IBM Cognos Series 7 Installations	110
Configuring Mixed Version Environments and Upfront	111
Using the Same Configuration Values for Both Versions	112
Multiple Server Groups	113
Example: Using Multiple Server Groups to Deliver Content in More Than One Language	114
Example: Using Multiple Server Groups in an Extranet and Intranet Environment	115
Ensure Successful Implementation of Multiple Server Groups	116
Install and Configure Components for Multiple Server Groups	117
Configure Components to Use Relative URLs	117
Configure Components to Use Alternate Gateways	118
Configure ISAPI Gateways	121
Configure NSAPI Gateways	122
Configure Apache Module Gateways	125
Enable Accessibility Support	128
Managing Locale Formats	130
Default Locale Formats	130
Locale Format Configuration File	130
Use the Same Source for Default Locale Format Information	131
Edit the Locale Format Configuration File	131
<b>Chapter 5: IBM Cognos Shared Components Settings</b>	<b>133</b>
Important and Common Changes	133
Locale Properties	133
Location Properties	133
Rendition Properties	135
Runtime Parameters Properties	136
Server Properties	136
<b>Chapter 6: Administration Settings</b>	<b>137</b>
Important and Common Changes	137
IBM Cognos Visualizer - Server Administration	137
General Properties	137
Deployment Manager	137
Default Folder Locations Properties	137
Mirrored/Mapped Servers	138
Time-out Values Properties	138

Troubleshooting Properties	138
Impromptu Web Reports - Administration	139
General Properties	139
NoticeCast Administration	139
Logging Properties	139
NoticeCast Administration Properties	140
PowerPlay Enterprise - Server Administration	141
Upfront Server - Administration	141
General Properties	141
<b>Chapter 7: IBM Cognos Impromptu Settings</b>	<b>143</b>
Important and Common Changes	143
Impromptu	143
Accessibility Properties	143
General Properties	143
Impromptu Administrator	144
Accessibility Properties	144
General Properties	144
<b>Chapter 8: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports Settings</b>	<b>147</b>
Important and Common Changes	147
Default Ports for Impromptu Web Reports Components	148
Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation	149
Common	151
Database Properties	151
Logging	151
Server Properties	153
Data Store	153
Copy Data Store Schema Files Properties	153
Create Data Store Properties	154
Create Data Store Location Properties	154
Gateway	154
General Properties	155
Server	155
Accessibility Properties	155
Auditing Properties	155
Dispatcher Tuning Properties	156
General Properties	156
Logging Properties	157
Register Services	158
Request Manager Tuning	158
<b>Chapter 9: IBM Cognos Visualizer Settings</b>	<b>159</b>
Important and Common Changes	159
General Properties	159
<b>Chapter 10: IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server Settings</b>	<b>161</b>
Important and Common Changes	161
Default Ports for IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server Components	161
Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation	162

Dispatcher	164
General Properties	164
Logging Properties	165
Gateway	166
General Properties	166
Tuning Properties	167
<b>Chapter 11: IBM Cognos NoticeCast Settings</b>	<b>169</b>
Mandatory Changes	169
Default Ports for NoticeCast Components	169
Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation	171
NoticeCast Data Store	172
Connection File	172
DB2 Data Store Configuration	172
General	173
Informix Data Store Configuration	175
Microsoft SQL Server Data Store Configuration	176
Oracle Data Store Configuration	177
NoticeCast Server	178
Logging Properties	179
Mail Server	179
NoticeCast Server	182
NoticeCast Shared	184
NoticeCast Environment	184
<b>Chapter 12: IBM Cognos PowerPlay Settings</b>	<b>187</b>
Important and Common Changes	187
General Properties	187
<b>Chapter 13: IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server Settings</b>	<b>191</b>
Important and Common Changes	191
Default Ports for PowerPlay Enterprise Server	191
Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation	193
Dispatcher	194
Accessibility Properties	194
General Properties	194
Gateway	196
General Properties	196
Temporary File Cleanup Service Properties	197
Tuning	197
<b>Chapter 14: IBM Cognos PowerPlay Transformer Settings</b>	<b>199</b>
Important and Common Changes	199
Default Ports for PowerPlay Transformer Components	199
Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation	199
General Properties (UNIX only)	200
Locale Access Options	200
MDL Save Options Properties (Windows only)	200
PowerGrid Configuration Properties (Windows only)	201

<b>Chapter 15: OLAP Data Access</b>	<b>203</b>
Important and Common Changes	203
IBM Cognos Finance Driver Properties	203
IBM Cognos Planning - Analyst Driver Properties	203
IBM Cognos Planning - Contributor Driver Properties	204
DB2 OLAP Driver Properties	205
Hyperion Essbase Driver Properties	205
Microsoft OLE DB for OLAP Driver	205
OLAP Server Properties	206
SAP BW OLE DB for OLAP Driver Properties	206
<b>Chapter 16: IBM Cognos DecisionStream Settings</b>	<b>209</b>
Important and Common Changes	209
IBM Cognos DecisionStream Designer	209
General Properties	209
Path Properties	209
IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services Client	209
General Properties	209
Path Properties	210
IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services SOAP Server	210
General Properties	210
Path Properties	211
IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services Socket Server	212
General Properties	212
Path Properties	213
IBM Cognos DecisionStream Runtime	213
General Properties	213
Path Properties	214
Program Locations Properties	214
<b>Chapter 17: IBM Cognos Finance Settings</b>	<b>217</b>
Important and Common Changes	217
IBM Cognos Finance	217
Excel Integration	217
Resolving Error Messages	218
IBM Cognos Finance for IIS	218
IBM Cognos Finance Network API Service	219
IBM Cognos Finance Web Service	219
<b>Chapter 18: IBM Cognos Planning Settings</b>	<b>221</b>
IBM Cognos - Contributor Data Server	221
General Properties	221
IBM Cognos Planning Shared	222
General Properties	222
Cache Properties	223
IBM Cognos Planning - Analyst	223
General Properties	223
IBM Cognos Planning - Analyst Excel Add-in	224
General Properties	224
IBM Cognos Planning - Contributor	224

Contributor Administration Tools General Properties	224
Contributor Common Components General Properties	224
IBM Cognos Enterprise Planning Service	225
IBM Cognos Enterprise Planning Service General Properties	225
<b>Chapter 19: Samples Database Information Settings</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>Chapter 20: Services Settings</b>	<b>229</b>
Important and Common Changes	229
Access Manager - Administration Automation	229
Access Manager - Directory Server	229
General Properties	229
Access Manager - Runtime	238
Authentication Source	238
Access Manager - Server	241
General Properties	241
Access Manager - Web Authentication	244
Authentication Services	244
Cookie Settings	246
IBM Cognos Application Firewall	246
General Properties	246
Log Properties	249
ObjectStore Database	249
General Properties	249
PDF Rendering	249
Font Embedding Properties	249
Font Paths Properties	251
General Properties	251
URL Color Properties	251
PowerPlay Data Services	252
Cache Properties	252
Client Server Properties	253
Firewall Port Properties	253
NAT Detection Timeout Properties	253
UDA	253
General Properties	253
Windows Common Logon Server	255
<b>Chapter 21: IBM Cognos Tools Settings</b>	<b>257</b>
Important and Common Changes	257
PowerPrompts	257
Data Access Properties	257
General Properties	258
Scheduler	258
General Properties	258
<b>Chapter 22: Upfront Settings</b>	<b>261</b>
Important and Common Changes	261
Data Store	261
General Properties	262

Gateway	262
General Properties	262
Tuning Properties	262
Server	263
Administration Connection Properties	263
Data Store Connection Properties	263
General Properties	264
Tracing Properties	264
Tuning	264
Web Interface Properties	266
Shared	267
Data Store Properties	267
File Manager Properties	268
General Properties	268
Server Administration Properties	268
<b>Chapter 23: Upfront File Manager Settings</b>	<b>269</b>
Important and Common Changes	269
Gateway	269
General Properties	269
Tuning Properties	269
Server	270
Administration Connection Properties	270
General Properties	270
Tuning	270
<b>Chapter 24: IBM Cognos Web Services Settings</b>	<b>273</b>
Important and Common Changes	273
Server Configuration File to Use With IBM Cognos Web Services	274
Default Ports for IBM Cognos Web Services Components	275
Application Servers	275
General Properties	275
Configuration	277
General Properties	277
Logging Properties	279
Server Groups Properties	280
Tuning Properties	286
IBM Cognos Web Services Servlet Engine	291
General Properties	291
Developer Shortcuts	291
General Properties	291
IBM Cognos Portal Services Settings	292
General Properties	292
<b>Chapter 25: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Settings</b>	<b>295</b>
Mandatory Changes	295
Default Ports for IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Components	295
Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation	296
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server	297
Apache Tomcat Server Configuration	297

IBM Cognos Metrics Manager General	299
IBM DB2 Server Data Store Configuration	303
Logging Properties	304
Microsoft SQL Server Data Store Configuration	305
Oracle Data Store Configuration	306
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Gateway	306
<b>Chapter 26: IBM Cognos Server Group Settings</b>	<b>309</b>
Access Manager Logon Server Group	309
Graphical User Interface	309
Command Line Interface	309
Access Manager Administration Server Group	310
Graphical User Interface	310
Command Line Interface	310
Upfront Server Group	311
Graphical User Interface	311
Command Line Interface	311
Upfront File Manager Server Group	312
Graphical User Interface	312
Command Line Interface	313
Impromptu Web Reports Server Group	313
Graphical User Interface	313
Command Line Interface	314
Specify Weighting Factors for Distributing Requests Across Servers	315
NoticeCast Server Group	316
Graphical User Interface	316
Command Line Interface	316
PowerPlay Enterprise Server Group	318
Graphical User Interface	318
Command Line Interface	318
IBM Cognos Visualizer Server Group	319
Graphical User Interface	319
Command Line Interface	320
<b>Chapter 27: Configuration Files</b>	<b>323</b>
Server Configuration Files	323
Configuration Specification Files	323
Environment Script Files	324
Installation Log Files	324
Configuration Log Files	325
Configuration Error Log Files	325
SQL Log Files	325
<b>Appendix A: Cerlocale Schema Elements</b>	<b>327</b>
Cerlocale Schema Elements	327
Locale Information	327
Data Formats	328
Format Pictures and Restricted Values	334
<b>Index</b>	<b>337</b>



---

# Introduction

---

IBM® Cognos® Configuration Manager is the tool used to configure IBM® Cognos® products.

This document explains how to

- use the Windows graphical user interface to configure IBM Cognos components
- use the command line interface in Windows® and UNIX® to configure IBM Cognos components
- modify your computer's environment to optimize functionality
- capture a computer's current configuration
- validate and apply configurations
- start IBM Cognos services
- create transferable environment specification files (.ccs)
- create scripts for unattended installations
- configure IBM Cognos server groups

This document also provides reference chapters that describe the default settings for all of your installed IBM Cognos components.

**Note:** Some Asian languages are not supported by IBM® Cognos® Impromptu®, IBM® Cognos® Impromptu® Web Reports, and IBM® Cognos® Visualizer.

## Finding information

To find the most current product documentation, including all translated documentation, access one of the IBM Cognos Information Centers at <http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/cogic/v1r0m0/index.jsp>.

You can also read PDF versions of the product release notes and installation guides directly from IBM Cognos product disks.

## Samples disclaimer

The Great Outdoors Company, GO Sales, any variation of the Great Outdoors name, and Planning Sample depict fictitious business operations with sample data used to develop sample applications for IBM and IBM customers. These fictitious records include sample data for sales transactions, product distribution, finance, and human resources. Any resemblance to actual names, addresses, contact numbers, or transaction values, is coincidental. Other sample files may contain fictional data manually or machine generated, factual data compiled from academic or public sources, or data used with permission of the copyright holder, for use as sample data to develop sample applications. Product names referenced may be the trademarks of their respective owners. Unauthorized duplication is prohibited.



---

# Chapter 1: Configuration Manager

---

Configuration Manager is a tool that you use to configure IBM® Cognos® products, components, and server groups. You can

- accept default configurations
- change configuration values for installed IBM Cognos components
- configure IBM Cognos components on your own computer
- prepare to configure IBM Cognos components on another computer by creating a script or a configuration specification file
- configure server groups

Some IBM Cognos components include an administration tool that you can use to customize property values. You can use Configuration Manager for many of the same tasks that you perform using the administration tools. The advantage of using Configuration Manager is that you can customize all your components at once, in one location.

Configuration Manager has two interfaces, a graphical user interface and a command line interface. The graphical user interface (p. 19) is available only on the Windows® platform. The command line interface (p. 39) is available on either Windows or UNIX® computers.

Configuration Manager is closely integrated with the installation wizard. For more information about the installation wizard, see the *Installation Guide* for your product. You can start Configuration Manager

- at the end of the Windows or UNIX installation wizard
- when you select it from the Windows Start menu
- when you use the command line interface in Windows or UNIX

Before making any configuration changes, you should understand component dependencies. We recommend that you read *Planning Advanced Installations*.

## Naming Conventions Used in this Document

This document includes references to path names and renditions related to IBM Cognos products. Because path names and renditions may be different based on the IBM Cognos products you install, or whether you change the default values during installation, the following generic references appear in this document:

- *installation\_location* represents the location of an IBM Cognos component or folder.  
For example, on Windows, the default location for temporary files used by PowerPlay® Enterprise Server is \ProgramFiles\Cognos\cern\ppserver. The generic reference format for this path is *installation\_location\ppserver*.
- *cern* represents the rendition of the IBM Cognos component.

For example, for IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Version 4, the server configuration file is cer5.csx. The generic reference format for server configuration files is cern.csx.

## Configuring IBM Cognos Components

Use the graphical user interface (p. 19) or the command line interface (p. 39) to configure IBM® Cognos® components.

For reference information about product and component properties, see the appropriate *Settings* chapter.

## Configuring IBM Cognos Server Groups

Use the graphical user interface (p. 31) or the command line interface (p. 39) to configure IBM® Cognos® server groups.

For reference information about server properties, see "IBM Cognos Server Group Settings" (p. 309).

### Server Groups

A server group consists of one or more server computers, each running an IBM Cognos application server, and one or more server computers, each running a Web server and a gateway. Configuring multiple servers in a server group distributes processing loads and ensures availability. IBM Cognos server groups use a common directory server, Access Manager Server, and data store if required.

For more information about server groups, see the *Planning Advanced Installations Guide*.

Configuration information about server groups is stored in a server configuration file (cern.csx). You can generate an initial cern.csx file on your computer using Configuration Manager.

For more information, see "Managing the Server Configuration File" (p. 90).

### Default Gateways for Server Groups

The following table shows the default gateways assigned to dispatchers for different types of server groups. If you install multiple versions, or multiple instances of the same version, on the same computer, you may not be able to use the default gateway URLs.

Server Group Type	Default Gateway URLs
IBM® Cognos® Impromptu® Web Reports	http://computername/cognos/cgi-bin/imrap.cgi
IBM® Cognos® NoticeCast	http://computername/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe
IBM® Cognos® PowerPlay® Enterprise Server	http://computername/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe
IBM® Cognos® Visualizer	http://computername/cognos/cgi-bin/vizcgi.exe
Notification	http://computername/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe

Server Group Type	Default Gateway URLs
Upfront	<code>http://computername/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>
Upfront File Manager	<code>http://computername/cognos/cgi-bin/fmcgi.exe</code>

### Default Ports for Server Groups

The following table shows the default port numbers assigned to dispatchers for different types of server groups. If you install multiple versions, or multiple instances of the same version, on the same computer, you may not be able to use the default port numbers.

Server Group Type	Default port
IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports	8020
IBM Cognos NoticeCast	5020
IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server	8010
IBM Cognos Visualizer	8060
Notification	5020
Upfront	8030
Upfront File Manager	8030

### Server Group Topology

The following diagram shows an example of a server group called PPESG1, which is of type PowerPlay Enterprise Server. In this example, the gateway is installed on computer1, and uses port 8010 to communicate with three other dispatcher computers.

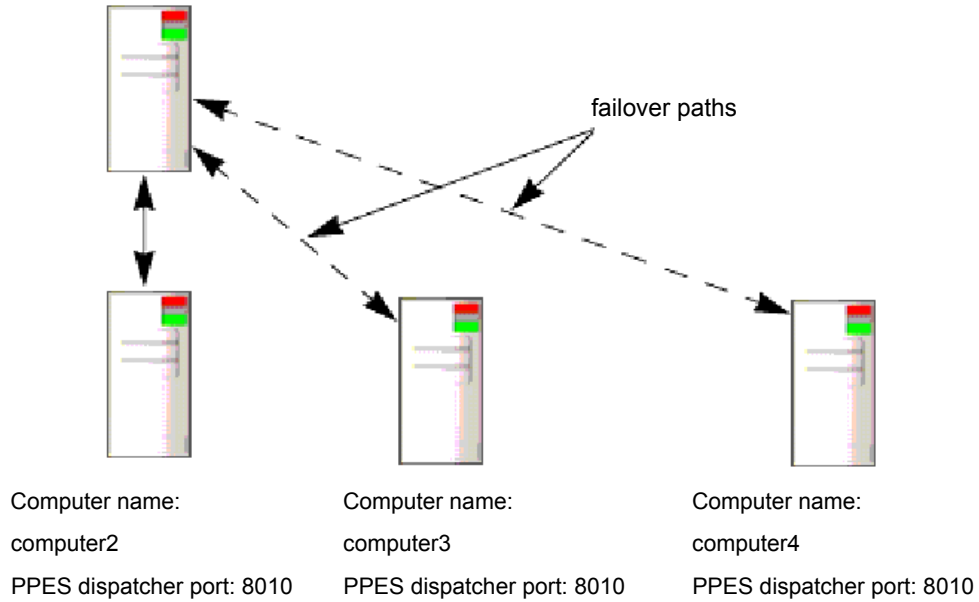
Server Group Name: PPESG1

Server group Type: PowerPlay Enterprise Server

Computer name:

computer1

gateway: <http://computer1/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe>



---

# Chapter 2: The Windows Graphical User Interface

---

Configuration Manager has a graphical user interface that is available only in Windows®. It shows the hierarchy of all the objects that you can configure so that you can quickly locate a property and change its value. You can complete configuration tasks using the graphical user interface.

To use the graphical user interface, from the **Start** menu, click **Programs, IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5, Tools, Configuration Manager**.

Each of these tasks can also be completed using the command line interface. To run Configuration Manager in UNIX®, you must use the command line interface.

You can use Configuration Manager to configure IBM® Cognos® components on individual computers, and to configure server groups.

## Configuring IBM Cognos Components

IBM® Cognos® components require some configuration if you do not choose a default installation. This section describes the tasks you need to perform to configure components. For information about component properties and their default values, see the *Settings* chapters.

### Components Tab

Use the **Components** tab to configure all the IBM Cognos components on a computer.


When you click the **Components** tab, three Windows® appear:








- The **Explorer** window shows the hierarchy of all the product families, components, categories, and properties that you are configuring for a computer.
- The **Properties** window shows all the properties and their associated values for the category currently selected in the **Explorer** window. For a description of a property, place your cursor over the property.
- The **Results** window shows problems with the configuration when you validate (p. 25), apply (p. 27), or start services (p. 28).

Each window contains icons that help you identify items being configured or identify a unique characteristic of a selected item.

### Explorer Window Icons




The **Explorer** window may contain some or all of the following icons.

Icon	Description
	The local computer.

Icon	Description
	The name of another computer for which you are preparing a configuration specification file (p. 323) or an environment script file.  <b>Note:</b> You cannot connect directly to a remote computer using Configuration Manager. For more information, see "Identify the Computer" (p. 29).
	The group of categories that appear under the IBM Cognos Shared component.
	An IBM Cognos product. When you expand this icon, you can see the nested hierarchy of components that are associated with the product.
	An IBM Cognos component that is not a service and therefore cannot be started.
	An IBM Cognos component that is also a service that you can start.
	A category, which is a group of associated properties for an IBM Cognos component. When you click a category you can view its property values in the <b>Property</b> window.
	A category template. You can click a category template and click <b>Create Instance</b> from the <b>Actions</b> menu to create a new category that is based on the template.


### Properties Window Icons



The **Properties** window may contain some or all of the following icons.

Icon	Description
	The property value is derived by computing other property values.
	The property value was customized, and is therefore not the default value.
	The property value is linked from another property value. When this value is changed, the icon is replaced by the icon that shows the value is customized.

### Results Window Icons

The **Results** window contains two tabs, the **Validation Results** tab and the **Warnings/Errors** tab. The **Results** window may contain some or all of the following icons.

Icon	Description
	An error message. When you double-click the message, the property value that caused the error is selected.

Icon	Description
	A warning message.
	An information message.

## Changing Configuration Values

Configuring your IBM Cognos software may involve changing the property values of one or more components that you have installed on your computer.

Your components are automatically associated with default values during the initial installation. You can start components using these default values, or you can change the values to suit your needs. For example, if one of the default ports defined for a component is used by a different software component on your computer, you must choose another available port.

You usually make configuration changes immediately after installation. You can, however, edit the property values of your components, or revert to the default IBM Cognos configurations, at any time.

The changes you make to component property values apply only to the computer you are configuring.

You can use the following ways to change configuration values:

- Change a single property value, validate it, and then apply the new configuration to the computer.
- Change property values of several components, validate the configuration, and then apply all the changes to the computer.
- Save a configuration as a file for later use.
- Open an existing configuration file and apply it to the computer.

You can configure IBM Cognos software using the graphical user interface ([p. 19](#)), as described in the instructions for each task, or use command-line input ([p. 39](#)).

## Open the Current Configuration

The current configuration describes the set of components and their values on the computer on which you are working. The current configuration includes:

- values that you have changed ([p. 21](#)) and applied ([p. 27](#)) to one or more installed components
- default values for any remaining installed components

You review the configuration of the computer to decide if you want to make changes. You can select the current configuration when you open Configuration Manager or when Configuration Manager is already open.

### Steps

1. Start Configuration Manager.

2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.

The current configuration of your computer appears.

**Tip:** If Configuration Manager is already open, click **File, Open Current Configuration**. If you have made changes to the current configuration, you are prompted to save the changes to a configuration specification file (p. 29).

## Open a Configuration Specification File

You can use a previously saved configuration specification file (p. 29)

- to apply a configuration that you saved or that someone else sent you
- to modify an existing configuration for one or more computers (p. 36)
- to export a script file (p. 30) to configure UNIX® or Windows computers

You can open a configuration specification file when you first open Configuration Manager or when Configuration Manager is already running.

### Steps

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open a configuration from a file**.
4. Select a configuration specification file (.ccs), if you saved one previously (p. 29), and click **Open**.

The previously saved configuration appears in the Configuration Manager window.

If your computer name does not appear at the top of the view, you must identify the computer (p. 29).

**Tip:** If Configuration Manager is already open, click **File, Open Configuration From File**. If you have made changes to the current configuration, you are prompted to save the changes to a configuration specification file (p. 29).

## Create a New Configuration

You can create a new configuration at any time during a Configuration Manager session. Use this option if you are creating multiple configuration files for different configurations. If you make a mistake during configuration, you can also create a new configuration to reset all your components to the default values.

The **New Configuration** option shows the default values for all the IBM Cognos components installed on your computer, replacing any values that you previously changed or applied. This differs from the **Open Current Configuration** option (p. 21), which shows the property values being used by your computer, including the values you applied (p. 27).

To create a new configuration:

- From the **File** menu, click **New Configuration**.



The configuration shown in Configuration Manager is replaced entirely with default values.

## Change Between Standard and Advanced Views

You can choose to view standard or advanced property views for all the components. In standard view, you see only the properties that most administrators might want to configure. In advanced view, all properties are visible.

### Steps

1. Click the **Components** tab.
2. From the **View** menu, click either **Standard** or **Advanced**.

**Tip:** You can also click the Standard  or Advanced  toolbar icon.

## Start the Configuration Wizard

The Configuration Wizard

- defines your runtime authentication source
- imports a server configuration file (*cern.csx*)
- helps you configure a directory server

For example, you can specify that your authentication source be a directory server on a remote computer.

You can start the Configuration Wizard from within Configuration Manager.

### Steps

1. Click the **Components** tab.
2. From the **Actions** menu, click **Start Configuration Wizard**.

## Find a Property Name

If you want to change a property value, but you do not know the exact location of the property within the object hierarchy, you can search for the property name. You can search using the full or partial text of a property name.

### Steps

1. In the **Explorer** window, click the computer, component, or category you want to search for a property name.
2. From the **Edit** menu, click **Find**.
3. Enter the full or partial text of the property name you are searching for.
4. Click **Find Next**.

The next occurrence of a property name containing the text you typed is highlighted.

## Change a Property Value

Even if you choose a default installation, it is often necessary to change some property values to adapt to your specific environment. For example, you may need to change a port number.

Configuration property values define how your IBM Cognos components function. Property values include port numbers, data locations, file sizes, and more. Some property values can be changed, and some cannot. Some properties are linked and share the same value.

Changing property values using Configuration Manager produces some of the same results as changing settings using the administration tools that come with some IBM Cognos components.

### Port Numbers

If you are changing a port number, make sure that you don't choose a number that is already being used by another component. For more information about default settings, see the chapter for the product you are configuring.

### Locations

If you are installing components on separate computers, you must change some location settings using Configuration Manager. For more information about default settings, see the chapter for the product you are configuring.

### Steps

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.
4. In the **Explorer** window, navigate to the category you want to configure.

The **Properties** window shows properties and their values for the selected component.

5. In the **Properties** window, click the value you want to change.

If the property is editable, the value box is available for input. If it is read-only, the value box is unavailable. If it is linked to another property, you are asked to verify the change.

**Tip:** You can set the text color for read-only values by clicking **Preferences** from the **File** menu.

6. If it is editable, type the new property value.
7. Repeat steps 4 to 6 for any other values you want to change.
8. Validate the selection ([p. 25](#)).

## Revert to a Saved Configuration

You can revert to a previously saved configuration. Use this option if you create multiple configuration files for different computers (p. 29), or make a mistake during configuration and want to reset the values of all your installed components.

The **Revert to Saved** option is available only if you previously opened a configuration specification file (p. 22).

To revert to a saved configuration:

- From the **Actions** menu, click **Revert to Saved**.

**Tip:** You can also right-click the item and click **Revert to Saved**.

## Set Selected Items to the Default Values

You can always set selected items back to the default values. This may be necessary if you made changes that return invalid results.

Setting selected items to default values differs from viewing a new configuration (p. 22). When you set selected items to the default values, your changes apply only to the value of those items that you selected in the **Explorer** window and their nested subitems.

When you view a new configuration, your changes apply to every IBM Cognos component installed on the computer. You can change all the items in the **Explorer** window, their properties, and their values.

### Steps

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Explorer** window, click the computer, component, or category that you want to change to the default values.
3. From the **Actions** menu, click **Set to Default**.

**Tip:** You can also right-click the item and click **Set to Default**.

The values for the selected items are replaced with the default values.

## Validate Changes

You should validate all changes and correct any errors before you apply changes. This ensures that your changes do not break rules that exist for each component. Rules are checked for the item selected in the **Explorer** window and all its nested subitems.

For example, rules may exist to ensure that a mandatory value was entered or that a numeric value is within an acceptable range.

**Tip:** By default, your configuration is automatically validated each time you apply changes (p. 27). To change this or other preferences, click **Preferences** from the **File** menu, and select the options you want.

### Steps

1. In the **Explorer** window, click the computer name, product, component, or category that you want to validate.
2. From the **Actions** menu, click **Validate Selection**.

**Tip:** You can also right-click the item and click **Validate Selection**.

3. If validation errors, warnings, or problem messages appear, choose one of the following actions:
  - [Find the source of an error and correct it.](#)
  - [Revert to a previously saved configuration.](#)
  - [Open the current configuration.](#) Use this option if you did not apply the invalid changes and want to preserve valid changes that you previously applied to the current selection.
  - [Set the selected item to the default values.](#) Use this option if you applied the invalid changes and want to preserve valid changes that you applied outside the current selection.

After validating the settings, you can apply the selection to your computer or you can save it to a configuration file that can be used to configure other computers.


## Find the Source of an Error

You may see error messages when you validate changes and apply your changes. When you see a validation error, you should find the source of the error and correct it.

All error messages are recorded in the error log file (p. 325). They also appear in the **Results** window when you validate changes (p. 25), and one or more validation rules are broken.

**Note:** If you selected the **Perform a validate with the apply** check box from the **File, Preferences** menu, you see error messages in the dialog box first. After you close the dialog box, you see any validation errors in the **Results** window.

### Steps

1. In the **Results** window, double-click the last error message  in the window.

The component generating the error is selected in the **Explorer** window, and the property with the incorrect value is selected in the **Properties** window.
2. Correct the value (p. 24).
3. Validate or apply the changes that generated the error.
4. Repeat steps 1-3 until all the error messages have been cleared from the **Results** window.

For information about troubleshooting, see the *Installation Testing and Samples Setup Guide*.

## Generate a Configuration Report

You can generate an HTML report that shows your current configuration. This can help you document your configuration.

The report file cannot be used as direct input to Configuration Manager.

### Steps

1. From the **File** menu, click **Generate Report**.
2. If you want to view the report in your browser, select **View Generated Report**.
3. In the **File name** box, type the name of the file.
4. Select the location where you want to save the report.
5. Click **Save**.

## Configuring Your Own Computer

After you change your configuration ([p. 21](#)), you should apply the configuration to the local computer.

Configuring your own computer involves the following process:

- ☐ [Stop your IBM Cognos services.](#)
- ☐ [Apply changes to the configuration.](#)
- ☐ [Start your IBM Cognos services.](#)

## Apply Changes

After you validate changes ([p. 25](#)), you can apply them to your computer. Applying changes updates your Windows registry files, .ini files, environment variables, and other files that store configuration information. You can apply changes to your entire configuration or any subset, including a product, component, or category.

Do not apply changes if you are preparing a configuration plan for another computer, but not configuring your own computer.

You should validate all changes and correct any errors before you apply the changes.

**Tip:** To automatically validate a configuration each time you apply it, click **Preferences** from the **File** menu, and select the **Perform a validate with the apply** check box.

### Steps

1. [Ensure that all processes used by IBM Cognos components are stopped.](#)
2. Start Configuration Manager.
3. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
4. Click **Open the current configuration**.

5. In the **Explorer** window, click the computer name, product, component, or category to which you want to apply changes.


**Tip:** We recommend that you apply your changes at the computer level when possible.

6. From the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Selection**.

**Tip:** You can also right-click the item.

7. [Start your IBM Cognos services](#).

## Start Your IBM Cognos Services

Some IBM Cognos products include services  that must be started before you can use the products. If you completed a default installation, your services are automatically started and Configuration Manager does not open after you finish the installation. However, after a custom installation, you must start these services using Configuration Manager.

You can start components one at a time, at the product level, or you can start all the components at the same time, at the computer level.

Do not start components whose settings generated errors or warnings during validation until you correct any problems. For more information, see ["Find the Source of an Error"](#) (p. 26).

### Steps

1. In the **Explorer** window, click the computer name, product, component, or category whose services you want to start.
2. From the **Actions** menu, click **Start Service**.

**Tip:** You can also right-click the item and click **Start**.

All services associated with the item you selected are started.

## Stop All IBM Cognos Services

If you have other IBM Cognos products installed, you must stop all IBM Cognos services before you install or uninstall another IBM Cognos component.

### Steps

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. On the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.
4. At the top of the **Explorer** window, click your computer name.
5. From the **Actions** menu, click **Stop Service**.

All IBM Cognos services running on your computer are stopped.

## Identify the Computer

You can specify the host name and operating system of the computer you want to configure. This ensures that the host information is correct when you save a configuration in a file (p. 29) or export it to a script (p. 30).

Some properties are not common to both Windows and UNIX®. Other properties have different default values depending on the operating system. When you specify a different operating system, the **Explorer** and **Properties** windows are updated accordingly.

### Steps

1. From the **Actions** menu, click **Specify Computer**.

The name of your own computer appears in the **Computer Name** box.

2. Clear the **Select local computer** check box.
3. In the **Computer name** box, type the name of the other computer.
4. Click the operating system running on the other computer.
5. Click **OK**.

All references to the hostname and operating system are updated in your current Configuration Manager view.

## Save a Configuration in a File

Save a configuration specification file (.ccs) so that you can

- send the configuration to someone else
- manage multiple configurations on your computer
- back up your current configuration while you make further changes

Use a configuration specification file to apply configuration manually using Configuration Manager. The configuration specification file is an XML file that specifies the Configuration Manager view.

After your Configuration Manager session, you can transfer the file to another computer (p. 31), and apply the configuration (p. 27).

When you save these files, you are not applying the configuration to the computer you are working on (p. 27).

Before saving the configuration specification file, ensure that the values are correct for the computer you want to configure by validating the settings (p. 25).

### Steps

1. From the **File** menu, click **Save As**.
2. In the **File name** box, type the name of the file.
3. In the **Save in** box, select the location where you want to save the configuration specification file (.ccs).

**Tip:** You can set the default location of the file by clicking the **Location** tab in the **File, Preferences** menu.

4. Click **Save**.

## Export a Configuration to a Script

You can export the configuration in your Configuration Manager view to an environment script file (.ccp). Use the environment script file to run an unattended installation. For more information, see the *Installation Guide* for your product.

Like saving a configuration specification file (.ccs) (p. 29), exporting a configuration to a script file (.ccp) captures the current Configuration Manager view. The difference is how you later use these two files.

Use an environment script file (.ccp) for an unattended installation that is driven by command line. The script is a text file containing commands that can be read by the command line interface (p. 39).

When you export script files, you are not applying the configuration to the computer you are working on (p. 27).

An exported script file does not contain the settings used for configuring server groups. To export server configuration settings, you must create a server configuration file (p. 35), and then copy the file to other computers in the server group (p. 31).

Before exporting the environment script file, ensure that the values are correct by validating the settings (p. 25).

### Steps

1. From the **Actions** menu, click **Export Script**.
2. In the **File name** box, type the name of the file.
3. In the **Save in** box, select the location where you want to save the configuration file (.ccp).

**Tip:** You can set the default location of the file by clicking the **Location** tab in the **File, Preferences** menu.

4. Click **Save**.

## Exit Configuration Manager

You can exit Configuration Manager at any time after you are satisfied with the configuration changes you made.

### Steps

1. From the **File** menu, click **Exit**.

A dialog box explains that, for the current configuration values to take effect, you must apply the changes (p. 27) and start any associated services (p. 28).

2. Choose whether to apply any changes to your configuration:
  - If you don't want to apply the changes, click **No**.

- If you want to apply the changes, click **Yes**, and then, from the **File** menu, click **Exit**.

Configuration Manager closes.

## Transfer the Configuration Files to Another Computer

Before you can finish configuring another computer, you must manually transfer a configuration specification file (.ccs) (p. 323) or an environment script file (.ccp) from the local computer to the computer you want to configure.

If you are configuring only your own computer, you do not have to transfer configuration files.

### Steps

1. Choose the computer to which you want to transfer the configuration files.
2. Locate the configuration specification file (.ccs) (p. 323) or environment script file (.ccp) on your computer.

**Tip:** You can check the location by clicking the **Location** tab in the **File, Preferences** menu.

3. Transfer the file to the other computer using any file transfer method, such as FTP.

You can now complete the configuration by setting up an unattended installation (p. 31), or opening the configuration specification file (.ccs) on the other computer (p. 21) and applying the configuration (p. 27).

## Unattended Installations

Unattended installations are script-driven and require no user intervention.

To perform an unattended installation of IBM Cognos products, you must

- use a transfer specification file (.ats) to copy the required components to your computer.
- use an environment script (.ccp) to configure the components for your environment.

For more information, see the *Installation Guide* for your product.

## Configuring IBM Cognos Server Groups

Server groups need to be configured so that gateway components can communicate with their associated servers. This section describes the tasks you need to perform to configure server groups.

For reference information about server group properties and their default values, see "[IBM Cognos Server Group Settings](#)" (p. 309).

### Server Configuration Tab

Use the **Server Configuration** tab to create server groups on a computer. For more information, see "[Create a Server Group](#)" (p. 32).

When you click the **Server Configuration** tab, the **Explorer** and **Properties** windows change.

The **Explorer** window shows






- computers and their installed server components
- server groups defined for each component

The **Properties** window shows server properties and their associated values for the computer, component, or server group currently selected in the **Explorer** window.

Each window contains icons that help you identify items being configured or identify a unique characteristic of a selected item.




### Explorer Window Icons

When you click the **Server Configuration** tab, the **Explorer** window may contain some or all of the following icons.

Icon	Description
	A view of all the computers associated with server groups.
	A computer that belongs to a server group.
	A server component that is installed on the specified computer.
	A view of all the server groups.
	A server group for an IBM® Cognos® component.

### Properties Window Icons

When you click the **Server Configuration** tab, the **Properties** window may contain some or all of the following icons.

Icon	Description
	A computer that belongs to a server group.
	A server component that is installed on the specified computer.
	A server group for an IBM Cognos component.

## Create a Server Group

You can create a server group so that gateways can communicate with their associated dispatchers in a distributed server environment. For more information, see ["Configuring IBM Cognos Server Groups" \(p. 16\)](#).

We recommend that you create the server groups for all the computers while on a Windows® computer, before importing the server configuration files (cern.csx) to the other computers [\(p. 36\)](#).

Before creating your server group, you must plan its topology. For more information, see the *Planning Advanced Installations Guide*.

Use these steps to create a server group using the Configuration Manager graphical user interface.

### Steps

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.
4. At the bottom of the **Explorer** window, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
5. Click **All Computers** in the **Explorer** window.
6. For each remote computer in the server group:
  - From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Dispatcher**.
  - In the right window, type the name of the computer in the **Dispatcher Name** box.
  - From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Component**, select from the drop-down list the type of component running on the computer, and click **OK**.
  - If applicable, add other components to the computer name.
7. Create the server group for a product:
  - Click **All Server Groups** in the **Explorer** window.
  - From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Server Group**, select the component name from the drop-down list, and click **OK**.

**Tip:** You can also click the **Add Server Group** toolbar icon. If the component is installed on your computer, the default gateway appears in the **Properties** window.

  - If the value in the **Gateway URL** field is blank or wrong, correct it.
8. From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Dispatcher to Server Group**, and click the dispatcher you added in step 6.
9. If the port number for the dispatcher is wrong, correct it.
10. Repeat steps 8 and 9 to add other dispatchers to the server group, if applicable.
11. Create the server configuration file (*cern.csx*) (p. 35).
12. Copy the server configuration file to a shared location, so that it can be imported from other computers (p. 36).

## Add a Server to an Existing Server Group

You may already have set up a server group (p. 32), but need to add a new server to the server group for failover and load balancing.

Use these steps to add a server to a server group.

### Steps

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.
4. At the bottom of the **Explorer** window, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
5. If the server configuration file for the server group is not yet on your computer, import it.
  - From the **Actions** menu, click **Read Server Configuration from File**.
  - Locate the server configuration file at a shared location and click **Open**.
6. Click **All Computers** in the **Explorer** window.
7. From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Dispatcher**.
8. In the left window, click the icon of the computer you just added. In the right window, type the name of the computer in the **Dispatcher Name** box.
9. From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Component**.
10. Select the component type running on that computer and click **OK**.
11. In the **Explorer** window, click the server group to which you are adding a server.
12. From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Dispatcher to Server Group**, and select the dispatcher you added in step 7.
13. If the port number for the dispatcher is wrong, correct it.

For more information, see "[Default Ports for Server Groups](#)" (p. 17) and the *Installation Guide* for your product.

## Encrypt a Server Configuration File

If you are creating a server configuration file (*cern.csx*) on a gateway computer, you can specify that the file in the *installation\_location/cgi-bin* directory will be encrypted. Encryption is very useful for customers operating in a secure environment who wish to ensure the integrity of their gateway computer.

If encrypted, and on a gateway-only machine, the *cern.csx* file is

- encrypted in the *cgi-bin* folder
- deleted from the *bin* folder

If encrypted, but not on a gateway-only machine, the *cern.csx* file is

- encrypted in the *cgi-bin* folder
- not encrypted in the *bin* folder

Use these steps to encrypt a server configuration file.

### Steps

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.
4. At the bottom of the **Explorer** window, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
5. From the **Actions** menu, select **Encrypt Server Configuration (cern.csx) file**.

The next time you create a server configuration file during the current Configuration Manager session, the *cern.csx* file will be encrypted.

## Create a Server Configuration File

You can create a server configuration file (*cern.csx*) to configure components distributed across multiple computers. Gateway components need this information to communicate with their associated dispatchers.

You can specify whether the *cern.csx* file is encrypted. For more information, see ["Encrypt a Server Configuration File" \(p. 34\)](#).

Before creating a server configuration file, ensure that the server group has been created. You can use Configuration Manager to

- accept the default server configuration
- import a server configuration file created on another computer
- create a server group yourself

Use these steps to create a server configuration file (*cer3.csx*).

### Steps

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.
4. At the bottom of the **Explorer** window, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
5. From the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Topology**.

**Tip:** You can also click the **Create the Server Configuration File** toolbar button.

On a gateway computer, the *cern.csx* file is created in the *installation\_location*\cgi-bin directory. On all other computers, the file is stored in the *installation\_location*\bin directory.

6. Copy the server configuration file to a shared location, so that it can be [imported from other computers](#).

## Import a Server Configuration File

Import an existing server configuration file to use server settings previously configured on another computer. When you import a server configuration file from another computer the information is merged with the server configuration information on the local computer. By sharing the same server configuration file with other computers in the server group, you ensure that all the servers and the gateway can communicate with each other.

You must import the server group file on each computer that is in the server group. This is not done automatically.

## Add a Server Group to an Existing Server Configuration

To add a server group to an existing server configuration, you open the shared server configuration file (*cern.csx*), add the new server group, and then import the server configuration file to the other computers to apply the changes.

To add a server group to an existing server configuration on UNIX®, you can use the create command in the Configuration Manager command line interface. However, you may find it easier to use Configuration Manager on Windows to add a server to an existing server group and to manage the server configuration file (*cern.csx*). It is also recommended that you keep this master copy of the server configuration file on your Windows computer.

### Steps to Add a Server Group to an Existing Server Configuration on Windows

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.
4. At the bottom of the **Explorer** window, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
5. If the server configuration file for the server group is not yet on your computer, import it.
  - From the **Actions** menu, click **Read Server Configuration from File**.
  - Locate the server configuration file at a shared location and click **Open**.
6. Click **All Computers** in the **Explorer** window.
7. From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Dispatcher**.
8. In the left window, click the icon of the computer you just added. In the right window, type the name of the computer in the **Dispatcher Name** box.
9. From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Component**.
10. Select the component type running on that computer and click **OK**.
11. In the **Explorer** window, click the server group to which you are adding a server.
12. From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Dispatcher to Server Group**, and select the dispatcher you added in step 7.
13. If the port number for the dispatcher is wrong, correct it.

14. Import the server configuration file to the other computers to apply the changes.

### **Steps to Add a Server Group to an Existing Server Configuration on UNIX**

1. Start Configuration Manager.

For more information, see ["The Command Line Interface" \(p. 39\)](#).

2. Import the server configuration file (`cern.csx`).

For more information, see ["Import a Server Configuration File" \(p. 36\)](#).

3. Create a server group.

For more information, see ["Create a Server Group" \(p. 32\)](#).



---

## Chapter 3: The Command Line Interface

---

Configuration Manager has a command line interface that you can run in a Windows® command window or a UNIX® shell. Use the command line interface to

- run a script to configure installed IBM® Cognos® components
- define the configuration settings for IBM Cognos components
- modify one or more configuration settings for an installed IBM Cognos component
- apply similar configuration settings to multiple computers

The command line interface provides much the same functionality as the graphical user interface (p. 19). The graphical user interface is available only in Windows. You can use the graphical user interface to generate a configuration specification file (.ccs) for both UNIX and Windows computers. For more information, see "Save a Configuration in a File" (p. 29).

To use the command line interface, you can enter commands interactively at the command line or you can create and call an environment script file (.ccp) to automatically configure multiple components.

**Note:** Only Bourne shell is supported for the command line interface.

### Interactive Mode

Use the command line interface in interactive mode to configure IBM® Cognos® components on individual computers, and to configure server groups.

#### Steps

1. Go to the *installation\_location/bin* directory.
2. At the command prompt
  - in UNIX®, type **configure**
  - in Windows®, type **configcp**

In the command examples (p. 44), on Windows, substitute **configcp** for **configure**.

3. Type the commands one at a time from the command line.

**Tip:** Wait for a response from each command before you type the next command.

## UNIX Man Page

Before you start the command line interface in UNIX®, you can view a Man page for the UNIX configure command.

### Steps

1. Go to the IBM Cognos installation directory, for example `cognos/cern`.
2. In a Bourne shell, type `./setup.sh`
3. Type `man configure`

## Command Line Help

After you start the command line interface, you can view help about a specific command. To see an overview of the commands, type the following.

`help`

To see help on a specific command, type the following.

`helpcommand_name`

## Run Environment Scripts

You can use environment script files (.ccp)

- to apply identical configuration settings to multiple computers
- to script unattended installations

In both the graphical user interface and the command line interface, you can export the current configuration to an environment script file (.ccp).

First, use Configuration Manager to set the configuration settings for as many installed components as possible. For example, you can define the settings that are common to the components you must configure. Next, validate the configuration so that you can correct any errors.

The environment script file (.ccp) contains the commands necessary to apply the configuration to the computer, or the active object. The script, however, does not contain the commands necessary to transfer the components specified in the transfer specification files. Therefore, before you can use a local configuration on another computer, the components to be configured on the remote computer must already be installed.

### Steps

1. Export the current configuration, or export a configuration object, to an environment script file (.ccp) using the script command.

The target location must already exist. The script command will not create a new directory.

For example, you could type

```
script "Access Manager - Directory Server" ../newscrips/accman/script1
```

**Tip:** You can also export a script using the graphical user interface.

2. Open the environment script file (.ccp) in an editor and customize it for each computer in your environment.

**Note:** This is the recommended method for configuring UNIX® computers.

3. Save the edited environment script file (.ccp).
4. Go to the *install location/bin* directory.
5. Run the script.
  - If you are in UNIX, type  
**configure -t environment script file name**
  - If you are in Windows®, type  
**configcp -t environment script file name**
  - If you have already started the command line interface, type  
**use environment script file name**

## Command Line Options at Startup

Use command line options at the command prompt to modify the behavior of Configuration Manager when it starts.

To run commands interactively from within the command line interface, see "Commands".

You can use the command line options

- to modify the location of log files
- to create an activity log
- to run an environment script unattended
- to run an unattended configuration that uses current configuration settings

Run command line options from the *install location/bin* directory.

### Syntax in Windows

**configcp -option [parameter]**

### Syntax in UNIX

**configure -option [parameter]**

The following table describes the command line options at startup.

Option	Description
-a <i>directory</i>	Specifies the location of the activity log file <i>cfa-yyyymmdd_hhmm.txt</i> .
-e <i>directory</i>	Specifies the location of the error log file <i>cfe-yyyymmdd_hhmm.txt</i> .

Option	Description
-l <i>file name</i>	Writes activities to the specified log file.
-o <i>file name</i>	Opens the specified configuration specification file (.ccs).
-m <i>file name</i>	Upgrades the specified script file (.ccp).
-q	Does not write output to stdout. This means there is no echo during an unattended installation.
-t <i>file name</i>	Runs the specified environment script (.ccp).
-u	Performs an unattended configuration by applying current property values.
-w	Starts the Configuration Wizard.

## Navigate the Configuration Object Hierarchy

You can use some Configuration Manager commands specifically to navigate the object hierarchy. The following table describes how you can use the navigation commands to locate the properties you must configure.

Navigation Command	Function	Tips
<b>list</b>	Returns a list of contained objects.	<p>alias: ls</p> <p>Use in combination with select <i>objectname</i> to navigate down the hierarchy.</p> <p>You can type only the first few characters of an object, and then press Esc or Tab to complete the file name.</p>
<b>select</b>	Makes the specified object active.	<p>alias: cd</p> <p>Type <b>cd /</b> to return to the root directory.</p> <p>Type <b>cd ..</b> to go up one level.</p> <p>You can type only the first few characters of an object, and then press Esc or Tab to complete the file name.</p>
<b>describe</b>	Shows detailed information about the specified object.	Use to view the current object hierarchy.

Navigation Command	Function	Tips
<b>find</b>	Searches for the first occurrence of the specified text.	You can type partial text. For example, type <b>po</b> to search for a port.

### Example Steps

This example uses numbered steps to describe how you can navigate the configuration object hierarchy to change a property value.

1. Go to the *installation\_location/bin* directory.

2. Type **configcp**

3. Type **ls**

The computer name is returned, showing that you are at the root directory.

4. Type **cd computer\_name**

5. Type **ls**

The top-level components of the Configuration object hierarchy appear. You decide that you want to select **IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server**.

6. Type **cd "IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server"**

7. Type **ls**

8. Type **cd Dispatcher**

9. Type **ls**

10. Type **cd General**

11. Type **Describe**

The path that you have navigated to reach the **General** category is shown.

12. Type **ls**

All the properties of the **General** category are shown with their default values. You decide you want to change the value of the property called **PowerPlay Server is Mirror**

**Note:** Because properties are leaf objects, you cannot navigate any further down this branch of the tree structure.

13. Type **Set "PowerPlay Server is Mirror"=True**

**Tip:** Do not enclose the value in double quotation marks (").

14. Type **cd ..**

You go up one level in the hierarchy.

15. Type **cd General**

16. Type **apply**

Your change is applied to the configuration.

17. Type **cd /**

You return to the root directory.

18. Type **exit**

Configuration Manager closes.

## Commands

There are a number of commands that you can use to set or modify your current configuration. For example, you can change the port used by a component, or specify the location of the samples databases.

Use the commands in the command line interface to tune the current specification, or modify some configuration settings for use on a remote computer.

**Tip:** The command line interface supports file name completion for object names in the configuration hierarchy. This means that you can type only the first few characters of an object, and then press Esc or Tab to complete the file name.

## Syntax Rules

You must know the following rules before you start using the command line interface:

- Commands are case-insensitive.
- All objects in the configuration, including the root configuration object and the properties, are case-sensitive.
- Use the fully-qualified name to refer to objects. Each object level is separated by the dot operator (.), as in this example:

```
"servername.Upfront.Server.Administration  
Connection"
```

**Tip:** You can use the UNIX® or DOS cd command and the file name completion property to manipulate objects if you do not know the fully-qualified name.

- Enclose object names in quotation marks (") if the names contain spaces or periods. For example

```
select  
"IBM Cognos NoticeCast"
```

You can also use a backslash (\) to ignore the meaning of special characters, such as spaces or equal signs (=). For example

```
select IBM Cognos\ NoticeCast
```

- Do not enclose property value strings in double quotation marks (") because every character after the equal sign (=) is interpreted as part of the value.

- Server names often contain a period (.), for example, cognos.com. To select an object containing a period, you must precede the period with a backslash (\). For example,

```
select
cognos\.com
select "cognos\.com"
```

Each command operates on an object in the configuration object hierarchy. The following commands are available.

## Overview of Commands

<b>apply</b>	Creates an instance of a category based on a category template
<b>create</b>	Creates an instance of a category based on a category template
<b>delete</b>	Deletes an instance of a category that is based on a template
<b>describe</b>	Shows detailed information about the specified object
<b>encrypt</b>	Sets the value for an encrypted property
<b>errors</b>	Lists the error and warning messages generated by the most recent command
<b>exit</b>	Closes the command line interface
<b>export</b>	Creates an environment script file (.ccp) for the current configuration
<b>find</b>	Searches for the first occurrence of the specified text
<b>findnext</b>	Searches for the next occurrence of the text specified by the find command
<b>getpreferences</b>	Displays settings related to the start and apply command.
<b>gotolink</b>	Returns the name of the property that is the source of the inherited value of the specified property
<b>list</b>	Returns a list of contained objects
<b>new</b>	Creates a new configuration specification file (.ccs) using the default configuration values for the installed components
<b>obtaincomputer</b>	Changes the current property value to use the active value applied on the local computer

<b>opencurrent</b>	Creates a view of the current configuration specification using the configuration values from the local computer
<b>openfile</b>	Opens an existing configuration specification file (.ccs)
<b>report</b>	Generates a report of the current configuration specification in HTML format
<b>restorelink</b>	Resets the inherited value for a property to the value of the property it references
<b>results</b>	Lists all messages generated by the most recent command
<b>revertsaved</b>	Changes the value of the specified object to the last saved value in the active configuration specification file (.ccs)
<b>save</b>	Saves the current configuration settings to a configuration specification file (.ccs)
<b>script</b>	Creates an environment script file (.ccp) for the current configuration
<b>select</b>	Makes the specified object active
<b>set</b>	Assigns a value to a property
<b>setdefault</b>	Resets the property settings to the default values
<b>setpreferences</b>	Changes settings related to the apply and start commands.
<b>specify</b>	Creates a configuration specification file using the property values of the components installed on the local computer. You use this configuration specification file as a template for configuring a different computer.
<b>start</b>	Starts a component that runs as a Windows® service or UNIX process
<b>stop</b>	Stops a component that is currently running as a Windows service or UNIX process
<b>upgrade</b>	Allows the user to upgrade a script without having to exit the command processor first. It will upgrade the specified script as if the user had specified the script on the command-line with the -m option, and then return to interactive mode.

<b>use</b>	Runs the specified environment script file (.ccp) from within the command line interface of the Configuration Manager
<b>validate</b>	Verifies that the configuration is valid for a specified object
<b>wizard</b>	Starts the Configuration Wizard

## Apply Command

Sets the configuration properties defined for one or more installed components. Updates existing configuration settings for the specified components installed on a local computer. Creates a server configuration file (*cern.csx*) containing server configuration information.

Use the apply command to write property values in the current configuration to the configuration data stores. These data stores may be registry settings, data stores, or configuration files.

The only way you can undo configuration settings after applying them to the local computer is to reset the values, and then re-apply.

Changes made to property values using the set command do not take effect until you use the apply command.

You cannot use the command at the property level because all properties contained in the category object must be applied.

To complete basic error checking on the configuration settings, you can use the validate command before you apply your settings or start processes on the local computer.

### Syntax

apply [*objectname*]

### Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the object for which the properties are applied. If no object is specified, the property values of the active object are updated.  <b>Type:</b> string
-------------------	--

### Example

In the following example, a port number is changed. The change is then validated, applied and saved in a configuration specification file.

```
configure ->select "Services.Access Manager - Directory
Server.General"

    Current object is General
configure ->set Port=391

    Port                                391
configure ->validate "Services.Access Manager - Directory
Server"
```

```
Successfully validated "Services.Access Manager - Directory
Server"
configure ->apply
    Successfully applied Services.Access Manager - Directory
Server"
configure ->save newconfiguration"
    Successfully saved newconfiguration.ccs
configure ->exit
```

### Create Command

Creates an instance of a category object. The new instance is added to your computer at the same level as the category object.

You can only create an instance of a category object that has the attribute Is a Template set to true. This means that the property values of the instances that you create are based on the property values of the category object that functions as a template.

**Tip:** Use the describe command to see a list of attributes for a category.

#### Syntax

create [*objectname*]

#### Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the category template on which the new object is based. If no object is specified, the active object is used as a template. <b>Type:</b> string
-------------------	--

### Delete Command

Deletes an instance of a category object that is based on a category template.

You can delete an instance of a category only if it has the attribute Is a Template set to true.

**Tip:** Use the describe command to see a list of attributes for a category.

#### Syntax

delete [*objectname*]

#### Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the category to delete. If no object is specified, an instance of the active object is deleted. <b>Type:</b> string
-------------------	--

## Describe Command

Shows information about the specified object. The information shown depends on the type of object in the configuration hierarchy.

The Location attribute shows the location of the specified object in the configuration hierarchy.

**Tip:** Use the list command to view the objects that occur under the specified object in the configuration hierarchy.

### Syntax

describe [*objectname*]

### Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the object to describe. If not specified, shows information about the active object.  Type: string
-------------------	--

### Example

In the following example, the find and describe commands are used together to search for ports that are used by the Access Manager - Runtime component. The describe command shows detailed information about the port.

```
configcp ->select "computername.Services.Access Manager
- Runtime"

Current object is Access Manager - Runtime
configcp ->find "port"

Current object is Port/SSL Port
configcp ->describe

Property Port/SSL Port
Name: Port
Location:
  computername
  - Services
    - Access Manager - Runtime
      - Authentication Source
        - Directory Server
          - Port/SSL Port

Description:
  The port number of the directory server. If SSL
is enabled, this field
  contains the SSL port number.

Datatype: Integer
Is Readonly: False
Is a Template: False
Is linked: False
Current Value: 389
```

```
Default Value: 389
You must import the computer value first to see it.
configure ->exit
```

Encrypt Command

Sets the value for an encrypted property.

The encrypt command has two forms, depending on whether you use it in an environment script file (.ccp) or interactively.

In an environment script, you specify the value of the property when you use the command, such as in the following example:

```
encrypt "
password
"=98a7bc02
```

Interactively, you specify the name of the encrypted property, and assign the value when prompted, such as in the following example:

```
encrypt "
password
"

configcp -> Please enter the new value:
configcp -> Please confirm the new value:
```

You must press Enter between prompts. The value is not echoed.

The encrypt command changes the current value of the property, but does not update the existing value until you use the apply command.

Use the set command to change the value of a property that is not encrypted.

Syntax

```
encrypt propertyname=value
encrypt propertyname
```

Parameters

<i>propertyname</i>	Required. Specifies the name of the encrypted property. <b>Type:</b> string
<i>value</i>	Required for environment scripts. Specifies the value to assign to the property. <b>Type:</b> integer or string

Example

In the following example, the value of a property is encrypted. The change is then validated and applied.

```
configure ->select "Services.Access Manager - Directory
Server.General"
```

```

    Current object is General
configure ->encrypt "Unrestricted User password"
Please enter the new value:
Please confirm the new value:
configure ->validate
    Successfully validated General.
configure ->apply
    Successfully applied General.
configure ->exit

```

## Errors Command

Lists the error and warning messages generated by the most recent command. When an error occurs, a prompt appears, stating that you can use this command.

You can specify the number of messages listed at one time by including the number parameter with the command. To view the next set of messages, press any key.

To see the results of a command, including information messages, use the results command.

### Syntax

errors

## Exit Command

Closes the command line interface.

### Syntax

exit

### Example

In the following example, an existing configuration specification is opened, the specification is exported to an environment script file (.ccp), and then the exit command exits from Configuration Manager.

```

configure ->openfile "./configurations/templates/template_1.ccs"
configure ->script server_name ./configurations/templates/template_1
    Successfully exported script: ./configurations/templates/template_1.ccp
configure ->exit

```

## Find Command

Searches for the first occurrence of the specified text. Searches the property names, also called labels, of the active object and all objects under it in the configuration hierarchy.

If the search is successful, returns the name of the property.

Enclose the search string in double quotation marks (") if the property name contains a space. You cannot use wildcard characters in your search. However, you can search for a property name by using part of the text you expect to find in a label. For example, to search for a port, you can type

```
find "po"
find "Por"
find "port"
```

The search is not case-sensitive.

Use the `findnext` command to search for additional occurrences of the specified text.

Use the `describe` command to see the value of a property.

### Syntax

`find text`

### Parameters

<i>text</i>	Required. Specifies the text to search for in the property names of the active object.  <b>Type:</b> string
-------------	---

### Example

In the following example, the `find` and `describe` commands are used together to search for ports that are used by the Access Manager - Runtime component. The `describe` command shows detailed information about the ports.

```
configcp ->select "computername.Services.Access Manager
- Runtime"
```

```
    Current object is Access Manager - Runtime
```

```
configcp ->find "port"
```

```
    Current object is Port/SSL Port
```

```
configcp ->describe
```

```
    Property Port/SSL Port
```

```
        Name: Port
```

```
        Location:
```

```
            computername
```

```
            - Services
```

```
                - Access Manager - Runtime
```

```
                    - Authentication Source
```

```
                        - Directory Server
```

```
                            - Port/SSL Port
```

```
        Description:
```

```
            The port number of the directory server.  If SSL
            is enabled, this field
```

```
                contains the SSL port number.
```

```
        Datatype: Integer
```

```
        Is Readonly: False
```

```
        Is a Template: False
```

```
        Is linked: False
```

```
        Current Value: 389
```

```

Default Value: 389
You must import the computer value first to see it.
configure ->exit

```

## FindNext Command

Searches for the next occurrence of the text specified by the find command. Searches the property names of the active object and all objects under it in the configuration hierarchy.

Use the describe command to see more information about the property.

### Syntax

findnext

CP\_HELP\_DESCRIBE Shows information about the specified object. The information shown depends on the type of object in the configuration hierarchy.

The Location attribute shows the location of the specified object in the configuration hierarchy.

**Tip:** Use the list command to view the objects that occur under the specified object in the configuration hierarchy.

### Syntax

describe [*objectname*]

### Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the object to describe. If not specified, shows information about the active object.
	<b>Type:</b> string

### Example

In the following example, the find, findnext, and describe commands are used together to search for ports that are used by the Access Manager - Server component. The describe command shows detailed information about the ports.

```

configcp ->select "computername.Services.Access Manager
- Server"

Current object is Access Manager - Server
configcp ->find "port"

Current object is Port
configcp ->describe

Property Port
Name: ASPort
Location:
WOTTPRINGLEP2K1
- Services
- Access Manager - Server
- General

```

```
- Authentication Service
  - Port
Description:
  The port number to be used for the Authentication
  Service.
Datatype: Integer
Is Readonly: False
Is a Template: False
Is linked: False
Current Value: 8070
Default Value: 8070
Computer Value: 8070
configcp ->findnext
  Current object is Port
configcp ->describe
  Property Port
  Name: TSPort
  Location:
    WOTTPRINGLEP2K1
    - Services
      - Access Manager - Server
        - General
          - Ticket Service
            - Port
  Description:
    The port number to be used for the Ticket Service.
  Datatype: Integer
  Is Readonly: False
  Is a Template: False
  Is linked: False
  Current Value: 9010
  Default Value: 9010
  Computer Value: 9010
configcp ->exit
```

### GetPreferences Command

Displays the settings related to the apply and start commands.

#### Syntax

```
getpreferences
```

#### Example

```
configcp ->getpreferences
ValidateWithApply  no
ApplyWithStart    yes
```

## GoToLink Command

Returns the name of the property that is the source of the linked value of the specified property.

Use with the set command to change the value of a shared property in the source and linked properties.

Use the describe command to determine if a property is linked to another property. Use the restorelink command to reset the linked value for a property to the value of the property it references.

### Syntax

gotolink [*objectname*]

### Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the property whose value is inherited from another property. If not specified, uses the active object.  Type: string
-------------------	--

### Example

The following example shows a change to the Upfront data store port. The describe command shows that the data store port shown in Upfront.Server.Data Store Connection is read only and is linked. To change the port, the gotolink command is used to find the source of the linked property. The object at the next higher level is selected, and a new value is assigned to the port.

```
configcp ->select "Upfront.Server.Data Store Connection.Data
Store Port"

    Current object is Data Store Port
configcp ->describe
    Property Data Store Port
        Name: DataStore Port
        Location:
            computername
            - Upfront
            - Server
            - Data Store Connection
            - Data Store Port
        Description:
            The port number used for the Upfront DataStore.
        Datatype: Integer
        Is Readonly: True
        Is a Template: False
        Is linked: True
        Current Value: 8151
        Default Value: 8150

        You must import the computer value first to see it.
configcp ->gotolink "Upfront.Server.Data Store Connection.Data
Store Port"
```

```
Current object is Data Store Port
configcp ->select ..
Current object is Data Store
configcp ->set "Data Store Port"=8151
Data Store Port                                8151
```

## List Command

Returns a list of objects that occur under the specified object in the configuration hierarchy. If the specified object is a category, the values of a group of properties are returned.

Use to

- view a list of the installed components
- determine the fully-qualified name of the object or property in the specification tree
- view the properties of a component or category

### Syntax

List [*objectname*]

ls [*objectname*]

### Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the object (computer, component, or category) whose contained objects will be listed. If no object is specified, the contained objects of the active object are listed.  Type: string
-------------------	---

### Example

This example creates a specification using the default configuration values for the installed components. The list command is used to show the fully-qualified name and port of the Upfront data store so that the current values of these properties can be changed. The new configuration is saved.

```
configure ->new
Successfully created a specification with default configuration
values.
configure ->cd Upfront
Current object is Upfront
configure ->list
Upfront contains:
  Shared
  Data Store
  Gateway
  Server
configure ->ls "Upfront.Shared"
Shared contains:
```

```

    General
    Data Store
    Server Administration
configure ->ls "Upfront.Shared.Data Store"
    Properties of Data Store are:
        Data Store Host
server_name
        Data Store Name
DataStore
        Data Store Port
8150
        Search Engine Host
server_name
        Search Engine Port
4455
        Log Path
/usr/cognos/cern/bin/UpfrontErrors.
log
configure ->set "Upfront.Shared.Data Store.Data Store
Name"=DataStore Backup
        Data Store Name
DataStore
Backup
configure ->set "Upfront.Shared.Data Store.Data Store
Port"=8152
        Data Store Port
8152
configure ->validate Upfront
    Successfully validated Upfront.
configure ->apply Upfront
    Successfully applied Upfront.
configure ->save ./configurations/newconfiguration
    Successfully saved ./configurations/newconfiguration.ccs
configure ->exit

```

## New Command

Creates a new configuration specification file (.ccs) using the default configuration values for the installed components.

Use the `opencurrent` command to create a configuration specification file (.ccs) based on the existing configuration properties on the local computer.

Use the `openfile` command to open an existing configuration specification file (.ccs) and view the configuration settings saved in this file.

### Syntax

`new`

### Example

This example creates a specification using the default configuration values for the installed components. Changes are made to the properties of the Upfront data store, and the new configuration is saved.

```

configure ->
configure ->new

```

```
Successfully created a specification with default configuration
values.
configure ->select "Upfront.Shared.Data Store"
Current object is Data Store
configure ->set "Data Store Name"=DataStore Backup
Data Store Name                                DataStore
Backup
configure ->set "Data Store Port"=8152
Data Store Port                                8152
configure ->validate
Successfully validated Data Store.
configure ->apply
Successfully applied Data Store.
configure ->save ./configurations/newconfiguration
Successfully saved ./configurations/newconfiguration.ccs
configure ->exit
```

ObtainComputer Command

Changes the configuration property values for a specified object to the values currently applied on the local computer. Returns the value that will be used.

Use the new command to create a configuration specification based on the default configuration values for the installed components.

Syntax

```
obtaincomputer [objectname]
```

Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the object whose configuration properties will be changed. If not specified, the configuration properties of the active object will be changed
	Type: string

Example

This example changes the existing configuration properties for Upfront to the values used by the local computer. The new specification is saved.

```
configure ->
configure ->openfile ./configurations/templates/template_1.ccs
Successfully opened the specification.
configure ->obtaincomputer Upfront
Property values in Upfront set to computer values
configure ->save ./configurations/templates/template_Upfront
Successfully saved ./configurations/templates/template_Upfront.ccs
configure ->exit
```

## OpenCurrent Command

Creates a view of the current configuration specification using the configuration values from the local computer. Reads the property values for the components that are installed and configured on the computer and includes them in the configuration specification file (.ccs). If some components are installed but have not yet been configured, the default values are used.

Use to see the installed components and their configuration properties.

Use the openfile command to open an existing configuration specification file (.ccs) and view the components and the property values saved in this file.

Use the new command to create a configuration specification file (.ccs) using the default values for the installed components.

### Syntax

opencurrent

### Example

This example opens a specification file using the configuration values that exist on the local computer, and then exports the specification to an environment script that can be run later on a different computer.

```
configure ->
configure ->opencurrent
    Successfully created a specification with the configuration
    values of the local computer.
configure ->script
server_name
    ./configurations/templates/template_1
    Successfully exported script: ./configurations/templates/template_1.ccp
configure ->exit
```

## OpenFile Command

Opens an existing configuration specification file (.ccs).

To open an existing .ccs file directly from the command line interface, use the -o option.

Use to view the components and the property values saved in this file.

Use double quotation marks (") to enclose file names and file locations that contain spaces, or use a backslash on Windows (\), or a forward slash on UNIX (/), before the space.

Use the opencurrent command to create a configuration specification file (.ccs) based on the existing configuration properties on the local computer.

### Syntax

openfile *specificationfile*

Parameters

<i>specificationfile</i>	Required. Specifies the name and location of the configuration file to open.  Type: string
--------------------------	--

Example

This example opens an existing configuration specification, and then exports the specification to an environment script.

```
configure ->openfile ./configurations/templates/template_1.ccs
    Successfully opened the specification.
configure ->script
server_name
    ./configurations/templates/template_1
    Successfully exported script: ./configurations/templates/template_1.ccp
configure ->exit
```

Report Command

Generates a report of the current configuration specification in HTML format. Lists the components, categories, and property values in the configuration.

Use double quotation marks (") to enclose file names and file locations that contain spaces, or use a backslash on Windows (\), or a forward slash on UNIX (/), before the space.

Syntax

```
report reportfilename
```

Parameters

<i>reportfilename</i>	Required. Specifies the name and location of the generated report.  Type: string
-----------------------	--

Example

In the following example, the properties of the Upfront data store is modified, validated, and then updated. These new values are saved to a new configuration specification file (.ccs). A report is generated that summarizes the configuration specification.

```
configure ->select "Upfront.Shared.Data Store"
    Current object is Data Store
configure ->set "Data Store Name"=DataStore Backup
    Data Store Name                DataStore
    Backup
configure ->set "Data Store Port"=8152
    Data Store Port                8152
configure ->validate
```

```
    Successfully validated Data Store.
configure ->apply
    Successfully applied Data Store.
configure ->save ./configurations/newconfiguration
    Successfully saved ./configurations/newconfiguration.ccs
configure ->report ./configurations/reports/newUpfront
    Successfully generated configuration report ./configurations/reports/
newUpfront.html
configure ->exit
```

RestoreLink Command

Resets the inherited value for a property to the value of the property it references.  
Use to restore the link between a property and its source.

Syntax

```
restorelink [objectname]
```

Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the linked property. If no object is specified, the active property value is restored.  Type: string
-------------------	--

Example

This example creates a configuration specification using the configuration values that exist on the local computer. By changing the Computer component for the directory server, the link to the source property is broken. The new settings are saved and then exported to a script file that can be applied to a remote computer. The link between the property and the source is restored on the local computer.

```
configure ->ls "Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory
Server"

Properties of Directory Server are:
  Computer
server_name
  Port/SSL Port          389
  Base Distinguished Name (DN) o=Cognos,c=CA
  Timeout                0
  Default Namespace
  Local Cache Enabled    No
  Local Cache File       c:\Program Files\Cognos
\cern\bin\default.lac
  SSL Enabled            No
  SSL Certificate Database

configure ->set "Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication
Source.Directory
Server.Computer"=server1
```

```
Computer          server1
configure ->script "Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication
Source.Directory
Server" ./configurations/newconfiguration/remoteDirectoryServer
    Successfully exported script: ./configurations/newconfiguration/
remoteDirectoryServer.ccp
configure ->select "Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication
Source.Directory
Server"

    Current object is Directory Server
configure ->ls

    Properties of Directory Server are:

        Computer          server1
        Port/SSL Port      389
        Base Distinguished Name (DN)  o=Cognos,c=CA
        Timeout            0
        Default Namespace
        Local Cache Enabled      No
        Local Cache File      c:\Program Files\Cognos
\cern\bin\default.lac
        SSL Enabled          No
        SSL Certificate Database

->restorelink Computer

    Restored links for Computer.
configure ->ls

    Properties of Directory Server are:

        Computer
server_name
        Port/SSL Port      389
        Base Distinguished Name (DN)  o=Cognos,c=CA
        Timeout            0
        Default Namespace
        Local Cache Enabled      No
        Local Cache File      c:\Program Files\Cognos
\cern\bin\default.lac
        SSL Enabled          No
        SSL Certificate Database
```

## Results Command

Lists all the error, warning, and information messages generated by the most recent command.

You may be prompted to use this command after you validate or apply configuration properties.

To view only error messages, use the errors command.

### Syntax

results

# RevertSaved Command

Changes the value of the specified object to the last saved value in the active configuration specification file (.ccs).

Use this command if you encounter errors when you validate or apply new configuration values and want to restore the settings.

Use the setdefault command to reset the configuration properties to the default values for a specified object in the configuration.

## Syntax

revertsaved [*objectname*]

## Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the object whose property values will be reset to the last saved value.  Type: string
-------------------	---

## Example

This opens an existing configuration specification file (.ccs). The directory server port used by Access Manager is modified, validated, and then updated. Assuming that the apply command returned an error message, the errors command is used to provide details about the cause of the error. The value of one of the ports is changed back to the previously saved value. These configuration values are saved to a new configuration specification file (.ccs).

```
configure ->openfile ./configurations/acccmanDS.ccs
    Successfully opened the specification.

configure ->select "Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication
Source.Directory
Server"

    Current object is Directory Server
configure ->set "Port/SSL Port"=1389

    Port/SSL Port                                1389

configure ->validate "Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication
Source"

    Successfully validated Authentication Source.
configure ->apply

    Failed to apply Directory Server.

    Type 'errors' without the quotes for details.
configure ->errors

Warning: Could not complete Apply for Authentication
Source.

Error: The directory server '
server_name
:1389' is not responding.

configure ->revertsaved "Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication
Source.Directory
Server"
```

```
Property values in Directory Server set to saved values
Directory Server
configure ->ls "Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory
Server"

Properties of Directory Server are:
Computer
server_name
Port/SSL Port 389
Base Distinguished Name (DN) o=Cognos,
c=CA
Timeout 0
Default Namespace
SSL Enabled No
SSL Certificate Database
configure ->apply
Successfully applied Directory Server.
configure ->save ./configurations/newDSconfiguration
Successfully saved ./configurations/newDSconfiguration.ccs
configure ->exit
```

Save Command

Saves the current configuration settings, without replacing any existing values in the operating environment, to a configuration specification file (.ccs).  
You can save configuration settings at any time.

Syntax

Save *specificationfilename*

Parameters

<i>specificationfilename</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the configuration specification file (.ccs). If no file is specified, then the active file is saved as untitled.ccs.  Type: string
------------------------------	--

Example

This example creates a configuration specification using the configuration values that exist on the local computer. The current port used by the Upfront data store is modified, validated and then updated. These new values are saved to a new configuration specification file (.ccs).

```
configure ->select "Upfront.Shared.Data Store"
Current object is Data Store
configure ->set "Data Store Port"=8152
Data Store Port 8152
configure ->validate
Successfully validated Data Store.
```

```
configure ->apply
    Successfully applied Data Store.
configure ->save ./configurations/newconfiguration
    Successfully saved ./configurations/newconfiguration.ccs
configure ->exit
```

Script command

Creates an environment script file (.ccp) for the current configuration.

The script does not contain the commands necessary to transfer the components and subcomponents specified in the transfer specification file (.ats). For more information about transferring components, see the installation guide for your product.

To run a script directly from the command line at startup, use the -t option.

Syntax

```
script [objectname] scriptfilename
export [objectname] scriptfilename
```

Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the object for which the properties are exported to the script file. If no object is specified, the properties of the active object are exported.  Type: string
<i>scriptfilename</i>	Required. Specifies the location and the file name of the script file to which the contents of the configuration will be exported. If the file does not currently exist, it is created.  Type: string

An exported script file does not contain server group definitions. To export server configuration settings, you must use the apply command (p. 47) to create a server configuration file. For information about applying using the graphical user interface, see "Apply Changes" (p. 27).

Example

This example creates a configuration specification using the configuration values that exist on the local computer.

```
configcp ->select computername
    Current object is computername
configcp ->script script0315
    Successfully exported script: script0315.ccp
configcp ->
```

## Select Command

Makes the specified object active. Returns the name of the active object from the current configuration specification.

To make an object active, use the select command and the fully-qualified name of the object. For more information about accessing objects in the configuration specification, see "Configuration Object Hierarchy".

After the selected object is active, you need only refer to the name of the property, rather than refer to the property explicitly by naming the sequence of objects in the path from the configuration root to the property. The following is an example:

```
select "Upfront.Data Store.General.Data Store Name"
describe
```

When you enter a command, it affects only the active objects.

To select the configuration root object, use a forward slash (/), such as in the following example:

```
select /
```

You can refer to the object that contains the current object by using two dots (..), such as in the following example:

```
select ..
```

**Tip:** You can also use the cd command to move between levels in the configuration hierarchy.

### Syntax

```
select [objectname]
```

### Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the object to make active. If not specified, the object most recently active remains active.  <b>Type:</b> string
-------------------	---

## Set Command

Assigns a value to a property. Changes the current value of the property, but does not update existing values in your environment until you use the apply command.

You can modify properties that are used by more than one component. The modified property value is inherited by all the properties that reference it. You must use the fully-qualified name of the shared component property.

This command fails if you try to update a property that is read-only.

If you set a value for an encrypted property, an error and a prompt to use the encrypt command are returned.

### Syntax

```
Set propertyname=value
```

Parameters

<i>propertyname</i>	Required. Specifies the name of the property. <b>Type:</b> string
<i>value</i>	Required. Specifies the value to assign to the property. <b>Type:</b> integer or string <b>Tip:</b> Do not enclose the value in double quotation marks (").

Example

This example changes properties for the Upfront data store. These values are then validated, applied, and stored in a new configuration specification file (.ccs).

```
configure ->select "Upfront.Shared.Data Store"
    Current object is Data Store
configure ->set "Data Store Name"=DataStore Backup
    Data Store Name          DataStore
    Backup
configure ->set "Data Store Port"=8152
    Data Store Port          8152
configure ->validate
    Successfully validated Data Store.
configure ->apply
    Successfully applied Data Store.
configure ->save ./configurations/newconfiguration
    Successfully saved ./configurations/newconfiguration.ccs
configure ->exit
```

SetDefault Command

Resets the configuration property settings to the default values for a specified object in the configuration. Returns the default values.

Use the new command to use the default configuration values for all installed components.

Syntax

```
setdefault [objectname]
```

Parameters

<i>objectname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the object for which the configuration property values will be reset. If no object is specified, the property values for the active object are reset. <b>Type:</b> string
-------------------	--

### Example

This example uses the describe and setdefault commands to change the directory server port number to the default value, 389.

```
configcp ->select "Services.Access Manager - Directory
Server.General.Port"

    Current object is Port
configcp ->describe
    Property Port
        Name: IniDSPort
        Location:
            computername
            - Services
                - Access Manager - Directory Server
                    - General
                        - Port
        Description:
            The port number of the directory server to configure.
        Datatype: Integer
        Is Readonly: False
        Is a Template: False
        Is linked: False
        Current Value: 391
        Default Value: 389
        You must import the computer value first to see it.
configcp ->setdefault
    Value of Property Port set to default value
configcp ->describe
    Property Port
        Name: IniDSPort
        Location:
            computernamenamecomputername
            - Services
                - Access Manager - Directory Server
                    - General
                        - Port
        Description:
            The port number of the directory server to configure.
        Datatype: Integer
        Is Readonly: False
        Is a Template: False
        Is linked: False
        Current Value: 389
        Default Value: 389
        You must import the computer value first to see it.
configcp ->
```

## SetPreferences Command

Changes the settings related to the apply and start commands.

### Syntax

setpreferences *name value*

### Example

```
configcp ->getpreferences
ValidateWithApply    no
ApplyWithStart      yes
configcp ->setpreferences ApplyWithStart no
configcp ->getpreferences
    ValidateWithApply    no
    ApplyWithStart      no
```

## Specify Command

Creates a configuration specification file (.css) using the property values of the components installed on the local computer. You use the configuration specification file as a template for configuring a different computer. When you create the file, you specify the computer name and operating system of the other computer.

### Syntax

specify *computer\_name operating\_system*

### Parameters

<i>computer_name</i>	Required. Specifies the name of the computer to which the configuration applies.  <b>Type:</b> string
<i>operating_system</i>	Required. Specifies the type of the operating system on the computer to which the configuration applies. Use one of the following, Windows, AIX, HPUX, or Solaris.  <b>Type:</b> string

### Example

This example creates and saves a configuration specification for a remote computer using the configuration values that exist on the local computer.

```
configure ->opencurrent
    Successfully created a specification with the configuration
    values of the local computer.
configure ->specify "server_1" "HPUX"
    Successfully created a specification for the computer
    server_1.
```

```
configure ->save ./configurations/remote/HPUXconfig
    Successfully saved ./configurations/remote/HPUXconfig.ccs
configure ->exit
```

## Start Command

Starts and registers a component that runs as a Windows service or UNIX process on the local computer. You must explicitly activate a component before it can function in your operating environment.

Before you start processes on the local computer, you should use the validate command, then use the apply command.

The command fails if the component is not an executable service or process.

Use the stop command to stop services or processes that are running.

### Syntax

```
start [componentname]
```

### Parameters

<i>componentname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the component to activate. If no component is specified, starts the active component. If the active object is not a component that can be started, returns an error. If the local computer is the active object, all running IBM® Cognos® Series 7 services or processes for the current configuration are started.  <b>Type:</b> string
----------------------	--

### Example

This example uses the configuration values that exist on the local computer. IBM® Cognos® PowerPlay® Enterprise Server services or processes are started.

```
configure ->select "IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.General"
    Current object is General
configure ->set "Auto-restart ppserver"=False
    Auto-restart ppserver                False
configure ->validate
    Successfully validated General.
configure ->apply
    Successfully applied General.
configure ->select "IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.
ppes.PPES
Server Group.server_name"
    Current object is server_name
configure ->set "port"=8090
    port                                8090
configure ->cd ..
```

```

configure ->validate
    Successfully validated PPES Server Group.
configure ->apply
    Successfully applied PPES Server Group.
configure ->save ./configurations/newconfiguration
    Successfully saved ./configurations/newconfiguration.ccs
configure ->start "IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server"
    Successfully applied IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise
    Server.
    Successfully activated the service.
configure ->The PowerPlay server has been successfully
started.
configure ->exit

```

## Stop Command

Stops a component that is currently running.

You must stop any Window services or UNIX processes before you change any of their configuration properties.

The command fails if the component is not running, or is not an executable.

Use the start command to restart services or processes.

### Syntax

stop [*componentname*]

### Parameters

<i>componentname</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the component to stop. If no component is specified, stops the active component. If the active object is not a component that can be stopped, returns an error. If the local computer is the active object, all running IBM Cognos Series 7 services or processes for the current configuration are stopped.  <b>Type:</b> string
----------------------	---

### Example

This example creates a configuration specification using the configuration values that exist on the local computer. The executables associated with IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server are stopped. The PowerPlay server is specified as a mirror. A new port number is assigned to the PowerPlay Enterprise Server Dispatcher. These values are then validated, applied, and stored in a new configuration specification file (.ccs). IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server services or processes are restarted.

```

configure ->stop "IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server"
Command "stop" Succeeded.
The PowerPlay server accepted the request. It will terminate.

```

```
Successfully stopped the service.
configure ->select "IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.General"
Current object is General
configure ->set "Auto-restart ppserver"=False
Auto-restart ppserver                                False
configure ->validate
Successfully validated General.
configure ->apply
Successfully applied General.
configure ->select "IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.
ppes.PPES
Server Group.server_name"
Current object is server_name
configure ->set "port"=8090
port                                                  8090
configure ->cd ..
configure ->validate
Successfully validated PPES Server Group.
configure ->apply
Successfully applied PPES Server Group.
configure ->save ./configurations/newconfiguration
Successfully saved ./configurations/newconfiguration.ccs
configure ->start "IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server"
Successfully applied IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise
Server.
Successfully activated the service.
configure ->The PowerPlay server has been successfully
started.
configure ->exit
```

## Upgrade Command

Allows the user to upgrade a script without having to exit the command processor first. It will upgrade the specified script as if the user had specified the script on the command-line with the `-m` option, and then return to interactive mode. The upgraded script includes information about properties that could not be upgraded. You may need to modify these properties manually.

### Syntax

upgrade *Series\_7.n\_script\_file* [*Series\_7.3\_script\_file*]

### Parameters

<i>Series_7.n_script_file</i>	Required. Specifies the name of the script file to upgrade. <b>Type:</b> string
-------------------------------	--

<i>Series_7.3_script_file</i>	Optional. Specifies the name of the output file name. If no name is specified, the new script file is named Series_7.3_script_file_upgrade.ccp
-------------------------------	--

**Example**

This example upgrades a script file named series7.ccp. Because no output file name is specified, the upgraded file is automatically named series7\_upgrade.ccp.

```
configure ->upgrade series7.ccp
Successfully upgraded script: series7_upgrade.ccp
configure ->
```

**Use Command**

Runs the specified environment script file (.ccp) from within the command line interface. Returns whether the script was successful.

To start an environment script directly from the command line interface, use the -t option.

**Syntax**

use *scriptfilename*

**Parameters**

scriptfilename	Required. Specifies the name and location of the command script to run.  Type: string
----------------	---

**Example**

This example uses a script that has been previously authored and exported. The script has all the necessary stop, apply, and start commands.

```
->configure ->use "./CommandScript/Template/new.ccp"
->configure ->exit
```

**Validate Command**

Verifies that the configuration is valid for a specified object. Validation rules are tested against the specified object and all objects that occur below it in the configuration object hierarchy. For example, if you validate the configuration of the local computer, then the configuration for each component and property is verified.

Some validation is performed automatically when you use the set command, such as ensuring that assigned values are the correct data type, within an acceptable range and consistent across shared components.

After you validate new property values, use the apply command to update the existing values in the data stores on the local computer.

### Syntax

validate [*objectname*]

### Parameters

objectname	Optional. Specifies the fully-qualified name of the object to validate. If no object is specified, the property values of the active object are validated.  <b>Type:</b> string
------------	---

## Wizard Command

Starts the Configuration Wizard, which

- defines your runtime authentication source
- imports a server configuration file (*cern.csx*)
- helps you configure a directory server

For example, you can specify that your authentication source be a directory server on a remote computer.

### Syntax

wizard

---

## Chapter 4: Common Configuration Tasks

---

There are many scenarios where you will complete additional configuration tasks. Some of these tasks may be optional. For example, if you want to use non-default names for the required Web aliases you must update some configuration properties. Other tasks are mandatory. For example, if you use a distributed environment you must manage the server configuration file (.csx) to ensure that all computers in the IBM® Cognos® application are using the same server group configuration information.

### Configure Security

To configure security for your IBM® Cognos® products, you must configure a directory server, and you must specify an authentication source for each computer on which you installed IBM Cognos components. For IBM Cognos Web products, you may also want to enable a Web authentication service.

### Configure a Directory Server

If you already have a supported directory server installed, you must configure it for use with IBM Cognos products. You only need to configure one directory server to use with all your IBM Cognos products and you complete this task only once. The configuration can be done on the computer where the directory server is located, or from any other computer where you installed IBM Cognos components.

The configuration process is the same regardless of which supported directory server you use. By completing this additional configuration task, you are

- extending the directory server schema so that the directory server is compliant with IBM Cognos products.
- creating a namespace on the directory server in which you can store IBM Cognos security data. If you already have a namespace that you want to use, you do not need to create one.
- setting properties to locate ticket services for single signon
- configuring ticket service failover if required

After you configure the directory server for use with IBM Cognos products, you can continue to configure your IBM Cognos environment.

The following table shows all the properties that you must verify or configure.

Property	Value
Are you sure you want to configure this directory server?	Ensure that the value is set to Yes

Property	Value
Schema Version	Unlike previous releases, different schema versions are not available. You can not change this setting.
Server Type	<p>The type of directory server that you installed.</p> <p>Use default setting, <b>Auto Detect</b>, which will automatically determine the type of directory server you are using, or select the type of directory server.</p>
Computer	<p>The name of the computer or IP address where the directory server is installed.</p> <p>Note: To support publishing from the PowerPlay® Enterprises Server to IBM® Cognos® ReportNet or IBM® Cognos® BI, you must use the same format to identify the location of the directory server when you configure IBM® Cognos® Series 7 and IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI. For example, if you use your computer name to identify the location of the directory server in IBM Cognos Series 7, you must use your computer name when you add the IBM Cognos Series 7 namespace to IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI. If you use your computer name in one location and IP address in the other, publishing from PowerPlay Enterprise Server to IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI will fail.</p>
Port	<p>The port that is used by the directory server.</p> <p>The default is port 389</p>
Base Distinguished Name (DN)	<p>A distinguished name (DN) which will be the first entry in the directory tree creating a branch for your data.</p> <p>The default setting is <b>o=Cognos, c=CA</b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> For an IBM Tivoli Directory Server, you must create the suffix DN used for storage of IBM Cognos data before completing the configuration in Configuration Manager. Also, if the suffix DN does not use the <i>o=example, ou=example</i> format, you must add the entry in Tivoli Directory Management. If the suffix DN is not added to Tivoli Directory Management, you will receive an error message when you apply the configuration indicating the base DN could not be created in the directory server.</p>

Property	Value
Unrestricted User Distinguished Name (DN)	<p>The distinguished name (DN) that the administrator uses to manage the contents of the directory server with unlimited privileges.</p> <p>The default is <b>cn=Directory Manager</b></p>
Unrestricted User Password	<p>A password for the unrestricted user.</p> <p>The default setting is <b>admin1234</b></p>
Primary Ticket Service	<p>The primary Access Manager computer name and ticket service port.</p> <p>The port number must be the same as the port number specified in Service.Access Manager - Server.General.Ticket Service on the primary Access Manager Server computer.</p> <p>You must specify a primary ticket service.</p> <p>The default is <b>computer_name:9010</b></p>
Secondary Ticket Service (1, 2, 3, 4)	<p>The computer names and port numbers of optional additional ticket services.</p> <p>To support failover between ticket services, specify one or more secondary ticket services.</p>
Enable Ticket Service Load Balance	<p>Enables you to balance the load between multiple ticket services.</p> <p>The default is <b>No</b></p> <p>To enable load balancing between ticket services, specify at least one secondary ticket service and select <b>Yes</b></p>
Default Namespace Name	<p>The name of the default namespace in the directory server.</p> <p>The default name is <b>Default</b></p>
Default Namespace Administrator Name	Administrator
Default Namespace Administrator Signon	Administrator
Default Namespace Administrator Password	The default is no password.

## Configuring Microsoft Active Directory

You must use Configuration Manager on a Windows® computer to configure Microsoft® Active Directory for use with IBM Cognos products. You can configure other types of directory servers from either a UNIX® or Windows computer, regardless of whether your directory is installed on a UNIX or Windows computer.

When you use Microsoft Active Directory with Windows Server 2003, anonymous binding to the directory server must be enabled before configuring the directory server for use with IBM Cognos products. For more information, see the Microsoft Knowledge Base article 326690.

### Steps to Configure a Directory Server from a Windows Computer

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** dialog box, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the Current Configuration**.  
The Configuration Manager starts.
4. In the **Explorer** window, expand the **Services** component and then expand **Access Manager - Directory Server**.
5. Click the **General** category.
6. If required, change default settings.
7. Select the **Are you sure you want to configure this directory server?** property, and change the value to **Yes**.  
You must change this value to **Yes** even if you do not need to change any properties.
8. Change other properties as required.  
Ensure that the **Computer** property contains the correct location of the directory server, especially if you are configuring a remote directory server.
9. In the **Explorer** window, select the **General** category, and from the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Selection**.

### Steps to Configure a Directory Server from a UNIX Computer

1. To run Configuration Manager, go to the *installation\_location/bin* directory, where *installation\_location* is the location where you copied the IBM Cognos software.
2. Type **configure**  
The command line **configcp-->** appears.
3. To navigate to the proper location in the object hierarchy, type on a single line  
**select "Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General"**
4. To list all the properties for the **General** category, type **ls**
5. Type on a single line

set "Are you sure you want to configure this directory server?"=Yes

Do not type spaces on either side of the equal sign.

6. To change other properties as required, type:

set "property name"=new value

Ensure that the **Computer** property contains the correct location of the directory server, especially if you are configuring a remote directory server.

7. Type **apply**

This step applies all the properties within the **General** category.

8. Type **exit** if you want to close Configuration Manager.

## Configuring the ADAM application as Directory Server

After installing Active Directory Application Mode (ADAM), you must make configuration changes to configure ADAM to act as your directory server, accept anonymous requests, and add authenticated users to the Administrators group. Once these tasks are done, use Configuration Manager to select ADAM as your server type and extend the schema.

ADAM is available for use only with Microsoft 2003 and can not be used with UNIX. You must run Configuration Manager on the same machine as ADAM to configure Microsoft 2003 ADAM for use with IBM Cognos products using the Series 7 namespace.

### Steps to Configure ADAM as the Directory Server

1. Launch ADAM from the **Start** menu, by clicking **Programs, ADAM**.

The Connection Settings dialog box appears.

2. Type your new connection name in the **Connection name** field, ADAM server name in the **Server name** field, and port number in the **Port** field.
3. Click the **Distinguished name (DN) naming context** radio button and set your IBM Cognos application directory DN.

**Note:** Select a base distinguishing name (DN) beginning with a value of o=, ou=, or dc= to ensure you can run Configuration Manager on the same machine as ADAM.

4. Click **OK**.
5. Right-click your IBM Cognos application DN node for your connection and select **New and Object**.

The Create Object dialog box appears.

6. Select **user** from the list in the **Select a class** window and click **Next**.
7. Type a new user name into the **Value** field and click **Next** and **Finish**.

The new user object has been created.

8. Right-click the new user and select **Reset Password**.

The Reset Password dialog box appears.

9. Set your new password, confirm the password, and click **OK**.
10. Right-click the new user and select **Properties**.

The User Properties dialog box appears.

11. Select **msDS-UserAccountDisabled** from the list in the **Attributes** window and click **Edit**.

The Boolean Attribute Editor dialog box appears.

12. If the **True** value is currently selected, select **False** and then click **OK**.

The Boolean Attribute Editor dialog box disappears.

13. Click **OK** to close the User Properties dialog box.

14. Go to the **CN=Administrators Properties** window by expanding the **CN-Roles** node.

15. Right-click **CN=Administrators** to expand this node before selecting **Properties**.

The CN=Administrators Properties window appears.

16. Select **member** from the list in the **Attributes** window and click **Edit**.

The Multi-valued Distinguished Name With Security Principal Editor dialog box appears.

17. Click **Add ADAM Account**.

The Add ADAM Account dialog box appears.

18. Type your Distinguish Name (DN) and click **OK**.

19. Click **OK** until you close all the remaining windows.

**Note:** You should leave ADAM default settings in the member attribute. By default, ADAM adds the Administrators role in this location. They should not be removed.

### Steps to Enable ADAM Anonymous Binds

1. Launch ADAM from the **Start** menu by clicking **Programs, ADAM**.

The Connection Settings dialog box appears.

2. Type your new connection name in the **Connection name** field, ADAM server name in the **Server name** field, and port number in the **Port** field.

3. Click the **Well-known naming context** radio button and select **Configuration** from the drop-down menu.

4. Click **OK**.

5. Go to the **CN=Directory Service Properties** window by expanding the **CN=Directory Services** nodes.

6. Select **Properties**.

The CN=Directory Service Properties window appears.

7. Select **dSHeuristics** from the list in the **Attributes** window and click **Edit**.  
The String Attribute Editor dialog box appears.
8. Type **0000002001001** in the **Value** field and click **OK**.

### Steps to Add Authenticated Users to the Administrators Group

1. Launch ADAM from the **Start** menu by clicking **Programs, ADAM**.  
The Connection Settings dialog box appears.
2. Type your new connection name in the **Connection name** field, ADAM server name in the **Server name** field, and port number in the **Port** field.
3. Click the **Well-known naming context** radio button and select **Configuration** from the drop-down menu.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Go to the **CN=Administrators Properties** window by expanding the **CN=Administrators** node.
6. Select **Properties**.  
The CN=Administrators Properties window appears.
7. Select **member** from the list in the **Attributes** window and click **Edit**.  
The Multi-valued Distinguished Name With Security Principal Editor dialog box appears.
8. Click **Add Windows Account**.  
The Select Users or Groups window appears.
9. Click **Locations** and then select your local host name from the menu.
10. Click **OK** before clicking **Advanced**.  
The Advanced window appears.
11. Click **Find Now** and click **Authenticated Users**.
12. Click **OK** until all the open windows are closed.

**Note:** Microsoft has a patch (838342) that will remove the requirement that authenticated users be added to the Administrators role. Eliminating this requirement is important as most companies will want to either create an IBM Cognos Administration account or designate an existing account. This patch must be obtained from Microsoft: it is not distributed directly to IBM Cognos customers.

### Steps to Configure ADAM Using Configuration Manager

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** dialog box, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the Current Configuration**.  
The Configuration Manager opens.

4. In the **Explorer** window, expand the **Services** component and then expand **Access Manager - Directory Server**.
5. Click the **General** category.
6. Select **ADAM** from the list of **Server Types**.
7. Set **Yes** for **Are you sure you want to configure this directory server?**
8. Ensure that the **Computer** property contains the correct location of the directory server.  
Change other properties as required.
9. Set the **Unrestricted User Distinguished Name (DN)** and **Unrestricted User Password** with the user you added when you specified ADAM as a directory server ([p. 79](#)).
10. Select **General** in the **Explorer** window.
11. Click **Apply Selection** from the **Actions** menu.

## Specify an Authentication Source

You must specify the authentication source that contains the Series 7 namespace you want your IBM Cognos products to use for end-user authentication and application security at runtime. A Series 7 namespace is stored in a supported directory server configured for use with IBM Cognos products.

You must complete this task on every computer on which you installed IBM Cognos components. You can complete this task at any time by using the Configuration Manager.

You store security data for your IBM Cognos products, such as user IDs and passwords, in an authentication source. An authentication source can be a namespace on a directory server, or a namespace in a local authentication export file (.lae). You must use a namespace on a directory server when you have a large number of users who need access to IBM Cognos applications at the same time. This situation applies to all IBM Cognos server products. You can use .lae files for single user access, such as working offline with a client product like PowerPlay User, or to prototype an IBM Cognos product. However, .lae files are not supported for use in server environments.

The process of setting your runtime authentication source is the same for all types of directory servers. You can modify or verify the settings using Configuration Manager. The following table shows all the properties that you must verify or configure.

Property	Value
Computer	<p>The name of the computer or IP address where the directory server is installed.</p> <p>To support publishing from the PowerPlay Enterprises Server to IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI, you must use the same format to identify the location of the directory server when you configure IBM Cognos Series 7 and IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI. For example, if you use your computer name to identify the location of the directory server in IBM Cognos Series 7, you must use your computer name when you add the IBM Cognos Series 7 namespace to IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI. If you use your computer name in one location and IP address in the other, publishing from PowerPlay Enterprise Server to IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI will fail.</p>
Port/SSL Port	<p>The port that is used by the directory server.</p> <p>The default is port <b>389</b></p> <p>If you used a different port for the new directory server or you have an existing directory server on another port, specify the port number.</p>
Base distinguished name (DN)	<p>A distinguished name (DN) which will be the first entry in the directory tree creating a branch for your data.</p> <p>The default DN is <b>o=Cognos, c=CA</b></p>
Timeout	<p>The maximum number of seconds in which a user must establish a connection to the directory server. The default (<b>0</b>) means that the timeout is determined by the network connectivity software.</p> <p>This setting is optional.</p>
Default Namespace	<p>The name of the Access Manager namespace to be used at runtime.</p> <p>By default, this property is empty. If the property is left empty, the directory server's default namespace will be used.</p> <p>If you must authenticate to a specific namespace, or if your directory server does not have a default namespace defined, enter the name of the namespace to be used.</p>

Property	Value
Local Cache Enabled (Windows only)	Yes or No  This value should be set to <b>No</b> if IBM Cognos application servers are installed on this computer.
Local Cache File (Windows only)	If local cache is enabled, this property specifies the name of the cache file.
SSL Enabled	Yes or No
SSL Certificate Database	If SSL is enabled, this property specifies which certificate database to use.

Complete the following steps on every computer on which you installed an IBM Cognos component. To complete the steps, you need the name of the namespace you want to use in the directory server. You can use either the default namespace that was created automatically when you configured the directory server, or you can use a different namespace, which you may have previously created in the directory server.

**Tip:** To complete the following steps on every computer, you can export a script from Configuration Manager which contains these runtime settings and then run this script on every computer.

### Steps to Configure Access Manager Runtime on Windows

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** dialog box, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the Current Configuration**.  
The Configuration Manager opens.
4. In the **Explorer** window, expand the **Services** component and then expand **Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source**.
5. Click the **Directory Server** category.
6. Change properties as required.  
Ensure that the **Computer** property contains the correct location of the directory server, especially if you are configuring a remote directory server.
7. In the **Explorer** window, select the **General** category, and from the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Selection**.

### Steps to Configure Access Manager Runtime on UNIX

1. To run Configuration Manager, go to the *installation\_location/bin* directory, where *installation\_location* in the location where you copied the IBM Cognos software.

2. Type **configure**  
The command line **configcp-->** appears.
3. To navigate to the proper location in the object hierarchy, type on a single line:  
**select "Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server"**
4. To list all the properties for the **Directory Server** category, type **ls**
5. To change properties as required, type:  
**set "property name"=new value**
6. Type **apply**
7. Type **exit** if you want to close Configuration Manager.

## Configuring Web Authentication

Access Manager Server is an IBM Cognos security component used in the authentication of users. Access Manager Server manages a ticket service and, optionally, an authentication service. These services can be configured in different ways to interact with other components when authenticating users.

### Client and Default Web Authentication

By default, the Access Manager login and runtime components communicate directly with the directory server (using port 389, by default) to authenticate users. To maintain session information, the Access Manager login and runtime components communicate with the Common Logon Server on Windows. For administration tools on UNIX and web applications, the Access Manager runtime component communicates with an Access Manager Server configured as a Ticket Service (using port 9010, by default).

### Alternate Web Authentication

In web deployments, you can configure the Access Manager login component to communicate with an Access Manager Server configured as an Authentication Service (using port 8070, by default). The Access Manager Server then communicates with the directory server (using port 389, by default) to authenticate the user and with an Access Manager Server configured as a Ticket Service (using port 9010, by default) to maintain session information.

In a single machine deployment, the Access Manager server acts both as an Authentication Service and Ticket Service, both services communicating on different ports. In a multi-machine installation, multiple Access Manager Servers can be configured for either service. You may wish to set up more than one Authentication Service or Ticket Service for fail over and load balancing.

For more information, refer to the IBM Cognos Series 7 *Planning Advanced Installations Guide*.

### Steps to Configure Web Authentication on Windows

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** dialog box, click the **Start** tab.

3. Click **Open the Current Configuration**.

The Configuration Manager opens.

4. In the **Explorer** window, expand the **Services** component and then expand **Access Manager - Server.General**.
5. Select the **Services** property, and change the value to **Both**.

If two or more Access Manager Servers are available and the ticket service is configured for at least one Access Manager Server, you can set the Services property on another Access Manager Server to **Authentication Service** only.

### Steps to Configure Web Authentication on UNIX

1. To run Configuration Manager, go to the *installation\_location/bin* directory, where *installation\_location* is the location where you copied the IBM Cognos software.
2. Type **configure**  
The command line **configcp-->** appears.
3. To navigate to the proper location in the object hierarchy, type on a single line:**select "Services.Access Manager - Server.General"**
4. To list all the properties for the **General** category, type **ls**
5. To change the **Services** property, type:  
**set Services=Both**
6. Type **apply**
7. Type **exit** if you want to close Configuration Manager.

## Configuring a Distributed Server Environment

If you distributed the IBM® Cognos® server components across multiple computers, you must perform some additional configuration so that the distributed server components can communicate with each other. Your distributed environment can include Windows®, UNIX®, or mixed platforms where Windows and UNIX computers interact.

For UNIX and mixed platform environments, it is recommended that you use Configuration Manager on a Windows computer to complete some of the UNIX configuration tasks. For UNIX environments, you will have some IBM Cognos components, such as administration tools, installed on Windows computers.

For more information about distributed environment considerations and options, see the *Planning Advanced Installations Guide*.

This is a two-step process. You must

- ❑ specify the location of each distributed component using Configuration Manager.

- ❑ manage the server configuration file (*cern.csx*) on each computer that contains a distributed component.

### Notes

- You may need to perform these tasks on an iterative basis, depending on how many computers you are using in your IBM Cognos server environment.
- You can create and manage the *cern.csx* file using either the command line interface or the graphical user interface of the Configuration Manager. If you have a complex server environment to configure, we recommend you use the graphical user interface where possible on Windows to complete your configuration.
- You can use the *Installation Planner* to help you plan, install, and configure IBM® Cognos® Series 7 applications. This tool is available from IBM Cognos on the Web (<http://www-01.ibm.com/software/data/cognos/>).

## Specify Component Locations

The following table contains some of the more common components that you may want to install on separate computers. Associated with each component is the place in the Configuration Manager object hierarchy where you should modify the component location if required.

Some components have more than one category that you need to modify.

Component	Object Hierarchy Location
Directory Server	Services.Access Manager - Directory Server. General.Computer Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authenticaton Source.Directory Server.Computer
Access Manager Server	Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.Primary Ticket Service <b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary tickets services. Services.Access Manager - Web Authentication.Authentication Services.Primary Authentication Service.Host <b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary authentication services.

Component	Object Hierarchy Location
Upfront Gateway	<p><b>Command Line Interface</b></p> <p>IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration. Upfront.Upfront Server Group.gateway</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code></p> <p><b>Graphical User Interface</b></p> <p>Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Upfront Server Group.Gateway URL</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code></p>
Upfront File Manager	<p><b>Command Line Interface</b></p> <p>IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration. Upfront File Manager.Upfront File Manager Server Group.gateway</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/fmcgi.exe</code></p> <p><b>Graphical User Interface</b></p> <p>Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Upfront File Manager Server Group.Gateway URL</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/fmcgi.exe</code></p>
Impromptu® Web Reports Gateway	<p><b>Command Line Interface</b></p> <p>IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configura- tion.IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.IWR Server Group.gateway</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/imrap.cgi</code></p> <p><b>Graphical User Interface</b></p> <p>Server Configuration.All Server Groups.IWR Server Group.Gateway URL</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/imrap.cgi</code></p>

Component	Object Hierarchy Location
PowerPlay® Enterprise Server Gateway	<p><b>Command Line Interface</b></p> <p>IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.PPES Server Group.gateway</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe</code></p> <p><b>Graphical User Interface</b></p> <p>Server Configuration.All Server Groups.PPES Server Group.Gateway URL</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe</code></p>
IBM® Cognos® Visualizer Server gateway	<p><b>Command Line Interface</b></p> <p>IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos Visualizer.Visualizer Server Group.gateway</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/vizcgi.exe</code></p> <p><b>Graphical User Interface</b></p> <p>Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Visualizer Server Group.Gateway URL</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/vizcgi.exe</code></p>

### Steps to configure component settings on Windows

1. From the **Start** menu, click **Programs, IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5, Tools, Configuration Manager**.
2. In the **Welcome** dialog box, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the Current Configuration**.  
Configuration Manager opens.
4. In the **Explorer** window, expand the appropriate categories until you can select the category that you want to configure.  
The **Properties** window shows properties and related values for the selected category.
5. In the **Properties** window, click the property.  
The resulting action depends on the status of the property. If the property is
  - active - the value box is available for input

If you edit a linked property, you are prompted to confirm changes. If you select **Yes**, all instances of the property are changed.

- read-only - the value box is unavailable

6. In the **Value** box, type the new value.
7. From the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Selection**.

**Tip:** You can also apply all the configuration settings at the same time. Either accept the default values or change them. Then, in the **Explorer** window, click the computer, and from the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Selection**. All the configuration settings are applied to all the components.

### Steps to configure component settings on UNIX

1. To run Configuration Manager, go to the *installation\_location/bin* directory, where *installation\_location* is the location where you copied the IBM Cognos software.
2. Type **configure**  
The command line **configcp-->** appears.
3. Go to the category that contains the setting value you want to change.
4. Type **setproperty name=new location**  
For example, set gateway=http://*computer\_name*/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe  
Do not include spaces on either side of the equal sign.
5. Type **apply**  
This step applies the new setting to the component.
6. Type **exit** if you want to close Configuration Manager.

## Managing the Server Configuration File

You can configure a distributed server environment using either the command line interface or the graphical user interface of Configuration Manager. If you have a complex server environment to configure, we recommend you use the graphical user interface when possible on Windows to complete your configuration.

The server configuration file (*cern.csx*) contains server configuration information so that gateway components can communicate with their associated servers (dispatchers). This file is automatically created when you use

- Configuration Wizard  
You choose to create a default configuration or import an existing configuration.
- Configuration Manager graphical user interface  
You click the **Server Configuration** tab, change server properties, and then click **Apply Topology** from the **Actions** menu.
- Configuration Manager command line interface

You apply the configuration settings for the IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters section of the object hierarchy.

The server configuration file contains information only about gateways and dispatchers. It does not contain information about directory servers, data stores, or other components.

In a distributed server environment, you must ensure that all the computers that have a server component installed on them have the same version of the *cern.csx* file by

- ❑ designing the server groups
- ❑ creating all the server groups on the master computer
- ❑ adding each computer to its associated server group. This is not done automatically. We recommend that you complete this task using the graphical user interface on a Windows computer
- ❑ creating a *cern.csx* file on the first computer
- ❑ using Configuration Manager to import the *cern.csx* file on each of the remaining computers that are in the server groups

For multiple instance installations, where more than one instance of the same component is installed on the same computer, there are separate *cern.csx* files for each instance. If the multiple instances are configured as a single application, you must ensure that each instance uses the same version of the *cern.csx* file.

Multiple server groups of the same component type can be defined in the *cern.csx* file. When this occurs, the first server group of that type in the list is the default server group for that component. To change the default server group for a component, you must configure each component.

On the computer where you install and configure a gateway, the server configuration file is located in the *installation\_location/cgi-bin* directory. On all other computers, the file is located in the *installation\_location/bin* directory.

The following examples show you different methods for configuring a distributed server environment. Choose the method that best suits your purposes.

You can configure a distributed server environment using either the command line interface or the graphical user interface of Configuration Manager. If you have a complex server environment to configure, we recommend you use the graphical user interface on Windows to complete your configuration.

### Example: Distributed Installation

This example shows how to install and configure Impromptu® Web Reports, PowerPlay Enterprise Server and NoticeCast on three computers. This configuration is for explanation purposes only. Other ways of distributing the components may better suit your needs.

This example assumes that the Web server, directory server, and all additional software is installed in the appropriate locations.

- ❑ On computer A, install the following gateways:
  - Impromptu Web Reports gateway
  - PowerPlay Enterprise Server gateway

- Upfront gateway
- Access Manager gateway
- ☐ On computer B, install all the following server components, except the gateways:
  - Impromptu Web Reports
  - NoticeCast server
- ☐ On computer C, install all PowerPlay Enterprise Server and Upfront server components, except the gateways.
- ☐ On computer A, start Configuration Manager and create server groups for the following components:
  - Impromptu Web Reports
  - PowerPlay Enterprise Server
  - Upfront
  - NoticeCast
- ☐ On computer A, add all three computers to their associated server groups, ensuring that all port numbers and gateway URLs are correct.
- ☐ On computer A, create a *cern.csx* file using Configuration Manager.
- ☐ On computer B, start Configuration Manager and import the *cern.csx* file from computer A.
- ☐ On computer C, start Configuration Manager and import the *cern.csx* file from computer A.
- ☐ **Stop** and then **Start** all services and processes on all three computers.

Now all three computers have the same version of the *cern.csx* file. As a result, the gateways on computer A can communicate with their associated servers on computers B and C.

Now all three computers have the same version of the *cern.csx* file. As a result, the gateways on computer A can communicate with their associated servers on computers B and C.

### Create a Server Group

To create a server group on UNIX, you can use the `create` command in the Configuration Manager command line interface.

However, you may find it easier to use Configuration Manager on Windows to add a server to an existing server group and to manage the server configuration file (*cern.csx*). It is also recommended that you keep this master copy of the server configuration file on your Windows computer.

#### Steps to create a server group on Windows

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.

4. At the bottom of the **Explorer** tab, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
5. Click **All Computers** in the **Explorer** window.
6. For each remote computer in the server group:
  - From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Dispatcher**.
  - In the right window, type the name of the computer in the **Dispatcher Name** box.
  - From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Component**, select from the drop-down list the type of component running on the computer, and click **OK**.
  - If applicable, add other components to the computer name.
7. Create the server group for a product:
  - Click **All Server Groups** in the **Explorer** window.
  - From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Server Group**, select the component name from the drop-down list, and click **OK**. If the component is installed on your computer, the default gateway appears in the **Properties** window.
  - If the value in the **Gateway URL** field is blank or wrong, correct it.
8. In the right window, right-click **Add Dispatcher to Server Group**, and click the dispatcher you added in step 6.
9. If the port number for the dispatcher is wrong, correct it.
10. Repeat steps 8 and 9 to add other dispatchers to the server group, if applicable.

### Steps to create a server group on UNIX

1. Start Configuration Manager.  
For more information, see ["The Command Line Interface" \(p. 39\)](#).
2. To navigate to the proper location in the object hierarchy, type on a single line:  
`select "IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration"`
3. To list the components under the **Server Configuration** category, type `ls`
4. Type the following command, where *component* is the name of the component for which you want to add a server group:  
`cd "component"`
5. To list the server groups, type `ls`
6. Type the following command, where *server\_group* is the name of an existing server group listed in the preceding step:  
`create "server_group"`
7. To list the server groups, type `ls`

## Create the Server Configuration File

Before creating a server configuration file, ensure that the server group has been created. You can use Configuration Manager to

- accept the default server configuration
- import a server configuration file created on another computer
- create a server group yourself

It is strongly recommended that you use Configuration Manager on Windows to create additional server groups and to create the server configuration file.

If a gateway is installed on the computer, the *cern.csx* file is created in the *installation\_location*\cgi-bin directory and in the *installation\_location*\bin directory. On all other computers, the file is stored in the *installation\_location*\bin directory.

### Steps to create the server configuration file on Windows

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.
4. At the bottom of the **Explorer** tab, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
5. From the **Actions** menu, select **Apply Topology**.

**Tip:** You can also click the **Create the Server Configuration File** toolbar button.

### Steps to create the server configuration file on UNIX

1. From the *installation\_location*/bin directory, type **configure**  
Configuration Manager opens.
2. Type **wizard**  
The Configuration Wizard starts.
3. In the **Welcome to the Configuration Wizard** page, type **n** or press Enter.
4. In the **Authentication Source** page, type **n** or press Enter to accept the default.
5. In the **Directory Server Authentication** page, press Enter to accept the default.
6. When prompted to configure the directory server, ensure that **No** is selected and press Enter.
7. In the **Configure Your Server Environment** page, ensure that the **Default Configuration** option is selected and press Enter.
8. To close the Configuration Wizard, select **Finish** by typing **f**

## Import the Server Configuration File

To ensure that all computers use the same server group configuration information, you import the server configuration file (*cern.csx*) to all computers. If you make changes to server group information on one computer, repeat the import process to apply the changes to all other computers. If you uninstall server components, you must update the server configuration file on all computers after you complete the uninstall.

### Steps to import the server configuration file on Windows

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.
4. At the bottom of the **Explorer** tab, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
5. From the **Actions** menu, click **Read Server Configuration from File**.
6. Locate the server configuration file at a shared location and click **Open**.

**Tip:** If you have a gateway installed on your computer, the server configuration file is stored in the *installation\_location/cgi-bin* directory. On all other computers, the file is stored in the *installation\_location/bin* directory.

### Steps to import the server configuration file on UNIX

1. From the *installation\_location/bin* directory, type **configure**  
Configuration Manager opens.
2. Type **wizard**  
The Configuration Wizard starts.
3. In the **Welcome to the Configuration Wizard** page, type **n** or press Enter.
4. In the **Authentication Source** page, type **n** or press Enter to accept the default.
5. In the **Directory Server Authentication** page, press Enter to accept the default.
6. When prompted to configure the directory server, ensure that **No** is selected and press Enter.
7. In the **Configure Your Server Environment** page, type the number next to the **Import a Server Configuration File** option and press Enter.
8. Type the number next to the **Filename to import** option and press Enter.
9. At the **Type a new value for 'Filename to import'** prompt, type the name and location of the server configuration file to import.

**Tip:** If you have a gateway installed on your computer, the server configuration file is stored in the *installation\_location/cgi-bin* directory. On all other computers, the file is stored in the *installation\_location/bin* directory.

10. Ensure that the file name and location of the server configuration file listed next to the **Filename to import** option is correct and press Enter.
11. Press Enter to finish.

### Add a Server Group to an Existing Server Configuration

To add a server group to an existing server configuration, you open the shared server configuration file (*cern.csx*), add the new server group, and then import the server configuration file to the other computers to apply the changes.

To add a server group to an existing server configuration on UNIX, you can use the create command in the Configuration Manager command line interface. However, you may find it easier to use Configuration Manager on Windows to add a server to an existing server group and to manage the server configuration file (*cern.csx*). It is also recommended that you keep this master copy of the server configuration file on your Windows computer.

#### Steps to add a server group to an existing server configuration on Windows

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. In the **Welcome** page, click the **Start** tab.
3. Click **Open the current configuration**.
4. At the bottom of the **Explorer** window, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
5. If the server configuration file for the server group is not yet on your computer, import it.
  - From the **Actions** menu, click **Read Server Configuration from File**.
  - Locate the server configuration file at a shared location and click **Open**.
6. Click **All Computers** in the **Explorer** window.
7. From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Dispatcher**.
8. In the left window, click the icon of the computer you just added. In the right window, type the name of the computer in the **Dispatcher Name** box.
9. From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Component**.
10. Select the component type running on that computer and click **OK**.
11. In the **Explorer** window, click the server group to which you are adding a server.
12. From the **Actions** menu, click **Add Dispatcher to Server Group**, and select the dispatcher you added in step 7.
13. If the port number for the dispatcher is wrong, correct it.
14. Import the server configuration file to the other computers to apply the changes.

#### Steps to add a server group to an existing server configuration on UNIX

1. Start Configuration Manager.

For more information, see ["The Command Line Interface" \(p. 39\)](#).

2. Import the server configuration file (*cern.csx*).

For more information, see ["Import the Server Configuration File" \(p. 95\)](#).

3. Create a server group.

For more information, see ["Create a Server Group" \(p. 32\)](#).

## Adding Servers to Existing IBM Cognos Server Groups

To distribute processing loads and to provide failover protection for IBM® Cognos® Series 7 products, you can add additional servers to an existing server group. For more information about the scenarios where additional servers can improve performance, see the *Planning Advanced Installations Guide* and the administration guide for your product.

To add a new computer to an existing server group, complete the following installation and configuration process.

- ☐ ensure that the existing components are configured and the application is working correctly in the existing server group
- ☐ use the custom installation option to install required IBM® Cognos® components for the new server on the new computer
  - For PowerPlay® Enterprise Server, install an additional PowerPlay Enterprise Server Dispatcher and PowerPlay Enterprise Server query and report processors
  - For Impromptu® Web Reports, install an additional Impromptu Web Reports server
  - For IBM® Cognos® Visualizer, install an additional IBM Cognos Visualizer dispatcher and IBM Cognos Visualizer Server query and report processors
  - For Upfront, install an additional Upfront server
  - For IBM Cognos security, install an additional Access Manager Server.

**Note:** On Windows®, you can install only one instance of an IBM Cognos server on each computer. On UNIX®, you can install multiple instances of IBM Cognos servers on the same computer.

For more information about custom installations and installing multiple instances, see the installation guide.

- ☐ install third-party components required to support the new server

For example, you must install ObjectStore on the computer that holds the Impromptu Web Reports data store, and on every computer that includes an Impromptu Web Reports server.

For more information about required third-party components, see the installation guide.

- ☐ update component configuration on the new computer

After you install components, verify, and if necessary change configuration settings in Configuration Manager.

- ❑ update the server configuration file on all computers

Update the master version of the server configuration file (.csx) to add the new server and then import the updated server configuration file to all other computers in the application.

For more information, see ["Managing the Server Configuration File" \(p. 90\)](#).

- ❑ on all computers, stop services, apply configuration changes, and then start services.

You can use Configuration Manager to stop and start all IBM Cognos services on each computer.

For a list of the services associated with each product, see the installation guide.

**Note:** For UNIX and mixed platform environments, you may find it easier to use Configuration Manager on a Windows computer to complete the server configuration tasks for UNIX computers. The following configuration settings are based on the Configuration Manager graphical user interface. However, you can complete the configuration using the Configuration Manager command line interface ([p. 39](#)).

## Configuration Settings for PowerPlay Enterprise Server

The following table shows the properties that you must verify or change after you install an additional PowerPlay Enterprise server and PowerPlay query and report processors.

Property	Description
Components.Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server	Specify information about the authentication source that you want your IBM Cognos products to use for security information such as user IDs and passwords at runtime.
Components.IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.General	Verify that the dispatcher information is correct and matches the server configuration information for the PowerPlay Server Group and Upfront Server Group.
Server Configuration.All Server Groups.PPES Server Group	Verify that the PowerPlay Enterprise Server Group information is correct.
Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Upfront Server Group	Verify that the Upfront Server Group information is correct.

## Configuration Settings for Impromptu Web Reports

The following table shows the properties that you must verify or change after you install an additional Impromptu Web Reports server.

Property	Description
Components.Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server	Specify information about the authentication source that you want your IBM Cognos products to use for security information such as user IDs and passwords at runtime.
Components.IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Common.Database.Data Store Location	Specify the location of the existing Impromptu Web Reports data store.  <b>Note:</b> It is not necessary to define a network share to this location.
Components.IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Common.Database.Data Store Host	Specify the name of the computer that includes the existing Impromptu Web Reports data store.
Server Configuration.All Server Groups.IWR Server Group	Verify that the Impromptu Web Reports Server Group information is correct.
Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Upfront Server Group	Verify that the Upfront Server Group information is correct.

## Configuration Settings for IBM Cognos Visualizer Server

The following table shows the properties that you must verify or change after you install an additional IBM Cognos Visualizer Server dispatcher and IBM Cognos Visualizer Server query and report processors.

Property	Description
Components.Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server	Specify information about the authentication source that you want your IBM Cognos products to use for security information such as user IDs and passwords at runtime.
Components.IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server .Dispatcher.General	Verify that the dispatcher information is correct and matches the server configuration information for the IBM Cognos Visualizer Server Group and Upfront Server Group.
Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Visualizer Server Group	Verify that the Visualizer Server Group information is correct.
Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Upfront Server Group	Verify that the Upfront Server Group information is correct.

## Configuration Settings for Upfront

The following table shows the properties that you must verify or change after you install an additional Upfront server.

Property	Description
Components.Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server	Specify information about the authentication source that you want your IBM Cognos products to use for security information such as user IDs and passwords at runtime.
Upfront.Shared.Data Store	Specify the information for the existing Upfront data store including data store host computer and data store name.
Upfront.Shared.General	Verify that the server group names are correct.
Upfront.Shared.Server Administration.Administration Service Port	To use a non-default port number, change the value for this property.
Upfront File Manager.Server.General.File Manager Storage Directory	Specify a common location that is used by all Upfront File Managers.

## Configuration Settings for an Access Manager Server

The following table shows all the properties that you must verify or change after you install an additional Access Manager Server.

Property	Description
Components.Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server	Verify that the authentication service and ticket service information is correct.
Components.Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General	Specify information about the authentication source that you want your IBM Cognos products to use for security information such as user IDs and passwords at runtime.

For more information about configuring and testing Access Manager Servers, including the use of multiple authentication or ticket services, see the Access Manager *Administrator Guide*.

## Configuring Web Aliases

The default installation option assumes that you will configure your Web server to use the following Web aliases.

Alias	Location	Permission
cognos	<i>installation_location</i> \webcontent	Read
cognos/cgi-bin	<i>installation_location</i> \cgi-bin	Execute
cognos/help	<i>installation_location</i> \Documentation	Read

The default Web aliases are appropriate for single version installations and installations that do not include multiple server groups. However, it is not mandatory that you use the default Web alias names. You can use a different name instead of cognos in the aliases. However, you must use cgi-bin and help as the second part of the alias, for example, *your\_name*/cgi-bin and *your\_name*/help. If you want to use different Web alias names, you should specify the alternate names during the initial installation. If you decide to change Web alias names at a later time, you will have to complete additional configuration tasks.

For some mixed version environments, and for multiple server groups, you must create additional Web aliases and complete some additional configuration using Configuration Manager. To configure Web aliases in mixed version environments and for multiple server groups, see ["Configure Web Aliases for Mixed Version and Multiple Instance Installations" \(p. 108\)](#).

## Configuration Locations for Web Aliases

To use non-default Web aliases you will have to modify some related properties for the active components. If you are using a mixed version environment, you will use both Configuration Manager 7.4 and Configuration Manager 7.5 to complete the configuration.

Component	Property Location
Upfront	<b>Command Line Interface</b>
	IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration. Upfront.Upfront Server Group.gateway
	Upfront.Gateway.General.Web Program Alias
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
	Server Configuration.All Server Group.Upfront Server Group.Gate- way URL
	Components.Upfront.Gateway.General.Web Program Alias
	<b>Upfront Server Administration</b>
	For Upfront, you must also use Upfront Server Administration to modify the Web content root directory ( <a href="#">p. 103</a> ).
	For more information, see the <i>Upfront Server Administrator Guide</i> .

Component	Property Location
Upfront File Manager	<b>Command Line Interface</b>
	IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration. Upfront File Manager.Upfront File Manager Server Group.gateway
	By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/fmcgi.exe</code>
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
Impromptu® Web Reports	Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Upfront File Manager Server Group.Gateway URL
	By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/fmcgi.exe</code>
	<b>Command Line Interface</b>
	IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.IWR Server Group.gateway
PowerPlay® Enterprise Server	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
	Server Configuration.All Server Groups.IWR Server Group.Gateway URL
	<b>Command Line Interface</b>
	IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.PPES Server Group.gateway
PowerPrompts	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
	Server Configuration.All Server Groups.PPES Server Group.Gateway URL
	<b>Command Line Interface</b>
	Tools.PowerPrompts.General.cgi-bin
	Tools.PowerPrompts.General.Documentation
	Tools.PowerPrompts.General.webcontent
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
	Components.Tools.PowerPrompts.General.cgi-bin
	Components.Tools.PowerPrompts.General.Documentation
	Components.Tools.PowerPrompts.General.webcontent

Component	Property Location
IBM® Cognos® Visualizer Server	<b>Command Line Interface</b>
	IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos Visualizer.Visualizer Server Group.gateway
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
	Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Visualizer Server Group.Gateway URL

## Specify Non-default Web Alias Names for New Installations

If you configured your Web server with non-default Web aliases, or if you have a distributed installation, you must complete additional configuration. The amount of additional configuration required depends on the IBM® Cognos® product you are configuring. For Upfront, in addition to using Configuration Manager, you will also complete a configuration step in Upfront Server Administration.

### Steps

1. Configure the Web server.  
For more information, see the installation guide.
2. In Configuration Manager, update the required properties to specify the non-default Web alias information.  
For a list of properties related to Web alias for each product, see "[Configuration Locations for Web Aliases](#)" (p. 101).
3. Ensure that the server configuration file (*cern.csx*) contains the correct gateway information.  
If you need to change the server configuration file, ensure that you stop and start the Upfront services. For example, if you change the Upfront gateway information, then you must stop and then start the Upfront services.
4. In Upfront Server Administration, change **Web content root directory** from */cognos* to */name*.  
For more information, see the *Upfront Server Administrator Guide*.

## Change Web Aliases for an Existing Installation

To change the Web aliases for an existing installation, you must complete configuration tasks using Configuration Manager, Upfront Server Administration, and if you have existing Upfront content, the NewsItem Gateway Manager.

### Steps

1. Configure the Web server.  
For more information, see the installation guide.

2. In Configuration Manager, update the required properties to specify the non-default Web alias information.

For a list of properties related to Web alias for each product, see "[Configuration Locations for Web Aliases](#)" (p. 101).

3. Ensure that the server configuration file (*cern.csx*) contains the correct gateway information.

If you need to change the server configuration file, ensure that you stop and start the Upfront services. For example, if you change the Upfront gateway information, then you must stop and start the Upfront services.

4. In Upfront Administration, change **Web content root directory** from */cognos* to */name*.

For more information, see the *Upfront Server Administrator Guide*.

5. If there are existing NewsItems in Upfront, use the NewsItem Gateway Manager in Upfront to change the gateway references.

For more information, see the *IBM Cognos Web Portal User Guide*.

## Configuring Mixed Version Environments

Mixed version environments include more than one version of IBM® Cognos® products and components. For example, an environment can include

- products from both IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Version 4 and IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5  
IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5 is not interoperable with releases prior to IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 3. This means that if you plan to use a mixed version environment that includes 7.5 products and 7.2 products, the versions cannot run at the same time.
- products from IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5 and IBM® Cognos® Planning Version 7.3 MR1 or IBM Cognos Planning Version 8.1

IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5 is interoperable with IBM Cognos Planning Version 7.3 MR1 and IBM Cognos Planning Version 8.1. Because different versions of the components, including Access Manager, Configuration Manager, and Upfront, are installed with each product series, some additional configuration is required to ensure that the different IBM Cognos products can communicate with each other.

The amount of additional configuration required for the mixed version environment will depend on how the components are distributed and the amount of interaction between the different versions. For example, if you are installing one IBM Cognos product that includes Upfront 7.4 and another IBM Cognos product that includes Upfront 7.5 on the same computer, and you intend to run both products at the same time, you must change the default port numbers for one of the versions of Upfront.

You can maintain your previous IBM Cognos Series 7 or IBM Cognos Planning environment while you install or upgrade to IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5. Similarly, you can maintain your existing IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 4 environment while you install or upgrade to IBM Cognos Planning Version 7.3 MR1 or IBM Cognos Planning Version 8.1. When you are satisfied that your latest

IBM Cognos product installation is working correctly, you can uninstall the products for the previous version.

For more information about IBM Cognos Series 7 mixed version environments and upgrading from a previous version of IBM Cognos Series 7 to IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5, see the IBM Cognos Series 7 *Solution Installation Guide*.

For more information about upgrading from a previous version of IBM Cognos Planning, see the installation guide for your IBM Cognos Planning product.

## Specify Unique Port Numbers

When you install two versions of the same product on the same computer, and you want to run both versions at the same time, you must specify unique port numbers for the second installation.

When you install two IBM Cognos products with different component versions on the same computer, and you want to run both products at the same time, you must specify unique port numbers for one of the component versions.

### Steps

1. In the existing installation of Configuration Manager, open the current configuration.
2. From the **File** menu, click **Generate Report**.
3. In a text editor, open the report created in step 2.
4. Compare the port numbers in the report produced by the previous version of Configuration Manager to the port numbers listed in the installation guide for your IBM Cognos product.
5. In the second Configuration Manager installation, modify the port numbers to prevent conflicts with the existing installation.

For more information, see "Changing Configuration Values" in the Configuration Manager *User Guide*.

## Configure Contributor OLAP Data Access for IBM Cognos PowerPlay

If you are running IBM® Cognos® PowerPlay® Enterprise Server with Contributor, you must check that your OLAP Data Access properties are properly configured to point to the right version of the IBM Cognos Planning - Contributor driver.

### Steps

1. In Configuration Manager for your IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5 installation, open the Current Configuration.
2. In the **Explorer** window, expand **OLAP Data Access**, and then select **IBM Cognos Planning - Contributor Driver**.
3. In the **Properties** window, change the **Enable IBM Cognos Planning - Contributor** value to **True**.

4. Change the **Driver Location** value to reflect the location of your IBM Cognos Planning - Contributor driver.
5. Apply and save the changes.

### Select Compatible Security

Unlike previous releases, IBM Cognos Series 7 version 5 does not support schema version 15.2 for namespaces. In IBM Cognos Series 7 version 5, you can not select different schema versions in Configuration Manager. The default **Schema Version** configuration setting, **Current**, represents schema version 16.0.

For more information about upgrade considerations and namespace versions, see the *Access Manager Administrator Guide*.

### Manage Configuration Files

There are some special considerations for managing configuration files in mixed version environment.

#### Manage Server Configuration Files

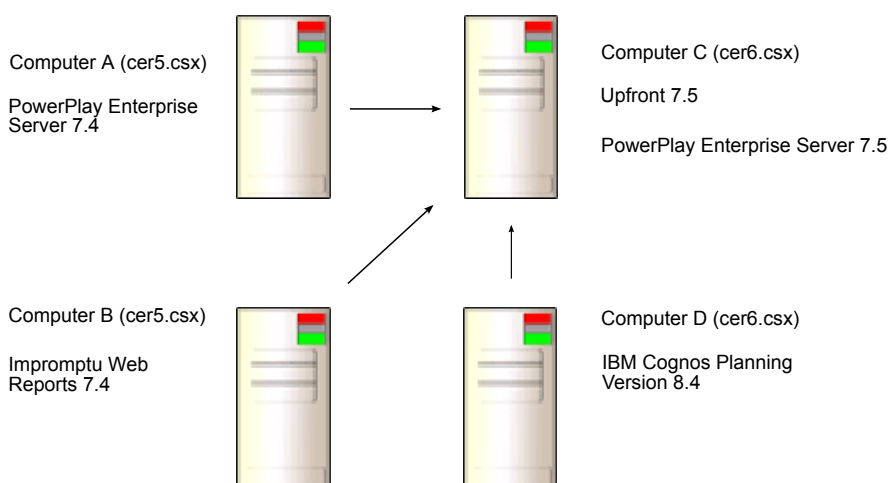
The server configuration file (*cern.csx*) contains server configuration information that enables the gateway components to find their associated dispatchers.

In a mixed version environment, there are two versions of the server configuration file. In addition to the *cer6.csx* file for IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5, a mixed version environment may also include a *cer5.csx* file for IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 4. Unlike a single version environment where you can import a single server configuration file to all server computers to ensure that each computer uses the same server configuration information, in a mixed version environment, each version of the server configuration file must be managed separately.

#### Example: Managing Server Configuration Files in a Distributed Mixed Version Environment

In the following mixed version environment, components are distributed on four computers. Upfront 7.5 is a shared component. Drill-through from PowerPlay Enterprise Server 7.5 to Impromptu® Web Reports 7.4 is also required.

**Note:** Some components, such as the shared directory server are not shown.



To configure this environment, you use both Configuration Manager 7.4 and Configuration Manager 7.5. You can complete the required configuration separately on each computer, or you can manage the server configuration files to import configuration information between computers.

### Steps

1. Configure computer A and computer B to include an Upfront Server Group for Upfront 7.4 on computer C.
2. Configure computer C to include an Impromptu Web Reports Server Group for Impromptu Web Reports 7.3 on computer B.
3. Configure computer D to include an Upfront Server Group for Upfront 7.4 on computer C.

For more information, see "Configuring a Distributed Server Environment" in the Configuration Manager *User Guide*.

### Manage Cognos.ini File for IBM Cognos Series 7 Installations

IBM Cognos products use a file called `cognos.ini` to store database connection information. This file is located in the *installation\_location*\Cognos directory and is used by all IBM Cognos components for the previous and current version on the same computer. Some products, such as Decision Stream, read and write database connection information to the `cognos.ini` file. Other products, such as PowerPlay Transformer, read and use the database connection information from the `cognos.ini` file.

If you are using a combination of products from a previous version and the current version of IBM Cognos Series 7 in a distributed environment, you should copy the `cognos.ini` files to each computer to ensure both versions of the IBM Cognos products use the same database connection information.

For a staged upgrade, you may want to copy your existing `cognos.ini` file to the 7.5 computer. For more information about upgrading, see the IBM Cognos Series 7 *Solution Installation Guide*.

### Manage the Access Manager Server

The Access Manager Server is an IBM Cognos security component that manages two services:

- a ticket service that issues tickets used to maintain single signons for users of IBM Cognos products

A ticket service issues tickets for a specified period of time, allowing users to access multiple applications without having to re-enter authentication data.

- an authentication service for authenticating users in Web-based deployments

At least one Access Manager Server is needed for each IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 4, IBM Cognos Planning Version 7.3 MR1, and IBM Cognos Planning Version 8.1 application, and we recommend that you install it on the same computer as the directory server. You can implement failover and load balancing for Access Manager Server services by installing additional Access Manager Servers. Configure load balancing for ticket services in `Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General` and for authentication services in `Services.Access Manager - Web Authentication.Authentication Services`.

By default, the authentication service is not enabled.

If you install IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 4 on the same computer as IBM Cognos Planning Version 7.3 MR1, IBM Cognos Planning Version 8.1, or a previous release of IBM Cognos Series 7, you should uninstall the existing IBM® Cognos® Access Manager Server and configure the IBM Cognos products to use the new version of the Access Manager Server. By default, the Access Manager Server for the previous version uses the same port as the Access Manager Server ticket service in the current version. If you do not uninstall the Access Manager Server from the previous release, there will be a port conflict.

If you installed IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5 on a different computer than IBM Cognos Planning Version 7.3 MR1, IBM Cognos Planning Version 8.1, or a previous release of IBM Cognos Series 7, you must configure the directory server to use the Access Manager Server on the new version's computer instead of the Access Manager Server on the other version's computer.

### Steps

1. In the previous version of Configuration Manager, expand `Services.Access Manager-Directory Server.General`.
2. In the Primary Ticket Service property, specify the name of the computer on which the Access Manager Server ticket service is installed.
3. Apply the changes.

## Configure Web Aliases for Mixed Version and Multiple Instance Installations

For mixed version and multiple instance environments that use the same Web server, you must configure additional sets of Web aliases. You can use the default Web alias settings for either the previous IBM Cognos Series 7 or IBM Cognos Planning installation, or for one instance of the IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5 installation. For each additional instance, you must create an additional set of Web aliases.

For example, to use the same Web server for a mixed version installation, you must configure two sets of Web aliases: one set for the previous installation of IBM Cognos Series 7 or IBM Cognos Planning products, and one set for the IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5 products. Your existing IBM

Cognos Series 7 or IBM Cognos Planning installation may use the default Web aliases based on the default installation directory, `cognos\cern`.

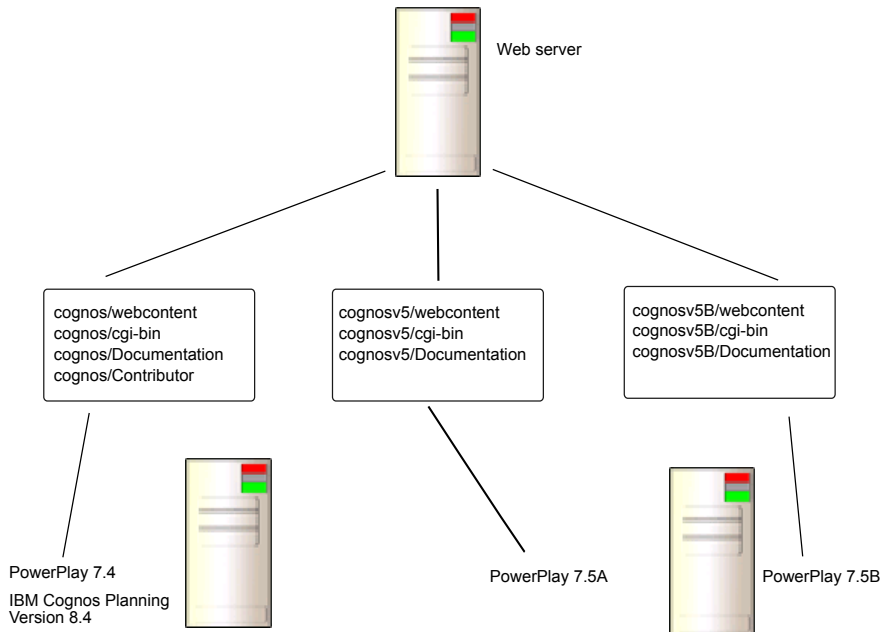
Alias	Location	Permission
cognos	cognos\cern\webcontent	Read
cognos/cgi-bin	cognos\cern\cgi-bin	Execute
cognos/help	cognos\cern\Documentation	Read

For the IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5 installation, you would configure an additional set of Web aliases. An additional set of Web aliases is required if the different versions are installed on the same, or different computers. You can use a different name instead of `cognos` in the aliases. However, you must use `cgi-bin` and `help` as the second part of the alias, for example, *your\_name*/cgi-bin and *your\_name*/help. The following aliases are based on the default installation location, `cognos\cer6`.

Alias	Location	Permission
cognosv4	cognos\cer6\webcontent	Read
cognosv4/cgi-bin	cognos\cer6\cgi-bin	Execute
cognosv4/help	cognos\cer6\Documentation	Read

If your IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5 environment includes multiple instances installed on the same computer, Web server configuration is similar to a multiple version environment. Each additional instance requires a unique set of Web aliases.

### Example: Web Aliases for a Mixed Version and Multiple Instance Installation



#### Steps

1. Configure the Web server.

For more information, see the installation guide for your IBM Cognos product.

2. In Configuration Manager, update the required properties to specify the non-default Web alias information.

- for multiple version installations, you may have to complete configuration in both the previous version of Configuration Manager and in Configuration Manager 7.4.
- for multiple instance installations, update properties for each instance of a server group.

For a list of properties related to Web alias for each product, see "Configuration Locations for Web Aliases" in the Configuration Manager *User Guide*.

3. Ensure that the server configuration file contains the correct gateway information.

If you need to change the server configuration file, ensure that you stop and start the Upfront services. For example, if you change the Upfront gateway information, then you must stop and start the Upfront services.

For more information, see "Managing the Server Configuration File" in the Configuration Manager *User Guide*.

4. In Upfront Server Administration, change **Web content root directory** from `/cognos` to `/name`.

### Manage ObjectStore in IBM Cognos Series 7 Installations

Object Store is required for Impromptu® Web Reports. IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5 includes a different version of ObjectStore than previous releases of IBM Cognos Series 7. The method you

will use for managing the ObjectStore installation is different depending on whether you are installing on UNIX® or Windows.

### Install ObjectStore on UNIX

You must install the new version of ObjectStore on UNIX for use with a UNIX installation of Impromptu Web Reports.

For information about installing ObjectStore on UNIX, see the Solution *Installation Guide*.

### Install ObjectStore on Windows

You must install the new version of ObjectStore on Windows for use with a Windows installation of Impromptu Web Reports. If the computer includes an existing ObjectStore installation, you must stop the related services and uninstall ObjectStore before installing the new version of ObjectStore included with IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5.

You can use the new version of ObjectStore.

For information about installing ObjectStore on Windows, and using ObjectStore to run both Impromptu Web Report 7.4 and 7.5 on the same computer, see the Solution *Installation Guide*.

## Configuring Mixed Version Environments and Upfront

For mixed version environments, you can use one of the following configuration options:

- maintain two versions of Upfront, the previous version of Upfront for use with previous versions of IBM Cognos products, and Upfront 7.4 for use with other 7.4 IBM Cognos products
- use a common Upfront 7.4 for both versions of IBM Cognos products

You cannot use a previous version of Upfront as a common Upfront for mixed version environments.

### Use Two Versions of Upfront

To run a previous version of Upfront and Upfront 7.5 on the same computer, you must use unique port numbers and data store name for the Upfront 7.5 installation. In Configuration Manager 7.5, change the following properties:

- Upfront.Shared.Data Store.Data Store Name  
The default value is DataStore.
- Upfront.Shared.Data Store.Data Store Port  
The default value is 8150.
- Upfront.Shared.Server Administration.Administration Service Port  
The default value is 8031.
- Upfront Server Group.Port  
The default value is 8030.

Also, you must use unique Web aliases for each version. For more information, see "Configuring Web Aliases" in the Configuration Manager *User Guide*.

## Use a Common Upfront in a Mixed Version Environment

You can use Upfront 7.5 as the common portal for both versions of IBM Cognos products. This option is useful as part of an overall upgrade strategy because it allows you to upgrade products at different times while using a common portal for content for both IBM Cognos product versions.

After you install Upfront 7.5, you configure the mixed version environment to use a common 7.5 version of Upfront. To complete this configuration, you will use Configuration Manager from both versions.

For more information about upgrading, including piecemeal upgrades where you upgrade products at different times, see the installation guide for your IBM Cognos product.

### Steps

1. For the version 7.5 products, use Configuration Manager 7.5 to configure the distributed environment including adding an Upfront server group.
2. On the computers with the previous version of components, use the previous version of Configuration Manager to add the Upfront Server Group and Upfront Server configured in step 1. Also, update the component configuration to include the required Upfront information.

You must complete this step even if the previous version's products are installed on the same computer as Upfront 7.5.

Products for both versions of IBM Cognos products are now configured to use Upfront 7.5.

**Note:** When you access mixed versions of a server group using a common Upfront, only one version of the online Help and About information is available. The server group listed first in the **Server Configuration** tab of Configuration Manager 7.5 determines which version of the online Help and About information is used. For example, if a version 7.5 **PPES Server Group** is listed before a version 7.1 **PPES Server Group**, version 7.5 online Help and About information appears in both versions. You can open version 7.1 online Help from the Start menu, and view version 7.1 About information from the server administration tool.

For more information, see "Example: Managing Server Configuration Files in a Distributed Mixed Version Environment" and "Configuring a Distributed Server Environment" in the Configuration Manager User Guide.

## Using the Same Configuration Values for Both Versions

You can install products for IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5, a previous version of IBM Cognos Series 7, and IBM Cognos Planning Version 7.3 MR1 or later, on the same computer and use the same configuration values, such as default port numbers and Web aliases, for both installations. However, you will only be able to run one version at a time. Each time you want to switch between versions you must stop and start services and reconfigure the Web server.

The following process summary assumes that IBM Cognos Series 7 products are installed and running.

- ❑ set services or processes for products for the previous version (*cern*) to manual start, not automatic start when the operating system starts

For example, in Windows 2000, from the **Control Panel, Administrative Tools**, start **Services**. View the properties for each *cern* service and select manual start.

- ❑ install version 7.4 products using the same configuration options
- ❑ set services or processes for IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5 products (*cer6*) to manual start, not automatic start when the operating system starts

- ❑ configure the Web server for the version you want to run

See below for the default Web server configuration values. The only difference between the Web server configuration for each version is the rendition (*cern*) in the mapping.

- ❑ to activate the required version, in Configuration Manager, start all services

You must use more than one version of Configuration Manager to start all services in a mixed version environment. For example, use Configuration Manager 7.4 to start 7.4 services, and use Configuration Manager 7.5 to start 7.5 services.

**Tip:** You can use a common environment script file to switch between versions. For more information, see "Run Environment Scripts" in the Configuration Manager *User Guide*.

- ❑ to switch to the other version, stop the active services, configure the Web server to change the mapping, and then start the services for the other version

**Note:** Web users should clear their browser cache when switching versions to ensure that they receive the correct versions of JavaScript™ files.

## Default Web Server Configuration Values

The following are the default Web server configuration values for all versions of IBM Cognos Series 7 and IBM Cognos Planning, where

- *cer6* for IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 5
- *cer5* for IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 4
- *cer4* is for IBM Cognos Series 7 Version 3, IBM Cognos Planning Version 7.3 MR1 and IBM Cognos Planning Version 8.1

Virtual directory	Mapping
/cognos	Program Files\Cognos\cern\webcontent
/cognos/cgi-bin	Program Files\Cognos\cern\cgi-bin
/cognos/help	Program Files\Cognos\cern\documentation

## Multiple Server Groups

Multiple server groups are an advanced installation option that offers solutions for a variety of reporting environments. You can maintain distinct applications which share the same Upfront

NewsIndex by using multiple server groups. With multiple server groups, you can have more than one server group per product, each with its own separate data store, but all accessible through a common portal.

Before you install and configure multiple server groups you should be familiar with planning considerations for advanced installations, and the procedures related to server group configuration in a distributed environment. For more information see the *Planning Advanced Installations Guide*.

**Note:** Multiple server groups are not supported for IBM® Cognos® NoticeCast. For each Upfront NewsIndex there can be only one associated NoticeCast server group.

There are several options for installing and configuring multiple server groups.

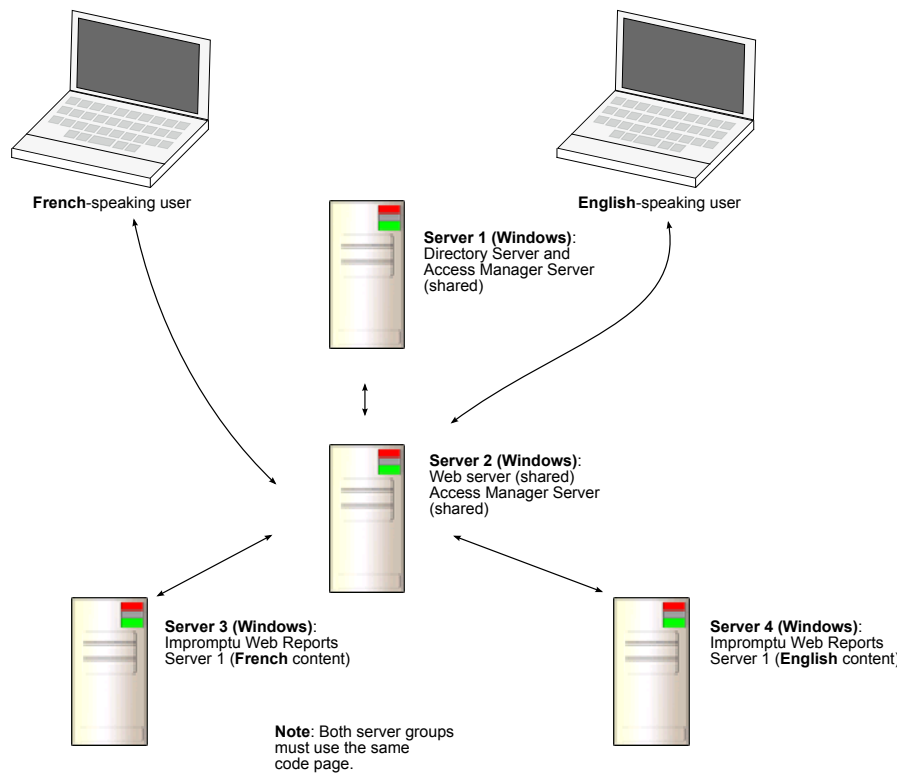
- you can install separate instances on different computers. Shared components can be on one of the server group computers, or on one or more different computers. You can use Windows, UNIX®, or mixed platform environments.
- you can install multiple instances on the same computer. Shared components can be on the same computer, or on one or more different computers. On Windows, only multiple instances of gateway components are supported. For more information about installing multiple instances, see the installation guide.

### Example: Using Multiple Server Groups to Deliver Content in More Than One Language

The Great Outdoors Company has sales offices worldwide. To support the regional offices, a central administrator creates and distributes reports using servers located at the head office. The reports are delivered in the language most appropriate for each regional office.

To separate the management and delivery of reports by language, two Impromptu® Web Reports server groups are created. One server group delivers French reports, and the other delivers English reports. Both server groups are associated with the same Upfront server group. Therefore both French-speaking users and English-speaking users access reports using the same Upfront NewsIndex.

The following diagram illustrates the multiple server group environment that supports the delivery of content in more than one language. In this example, Impromptu server groups are installed as separate instances on different Windows servers.



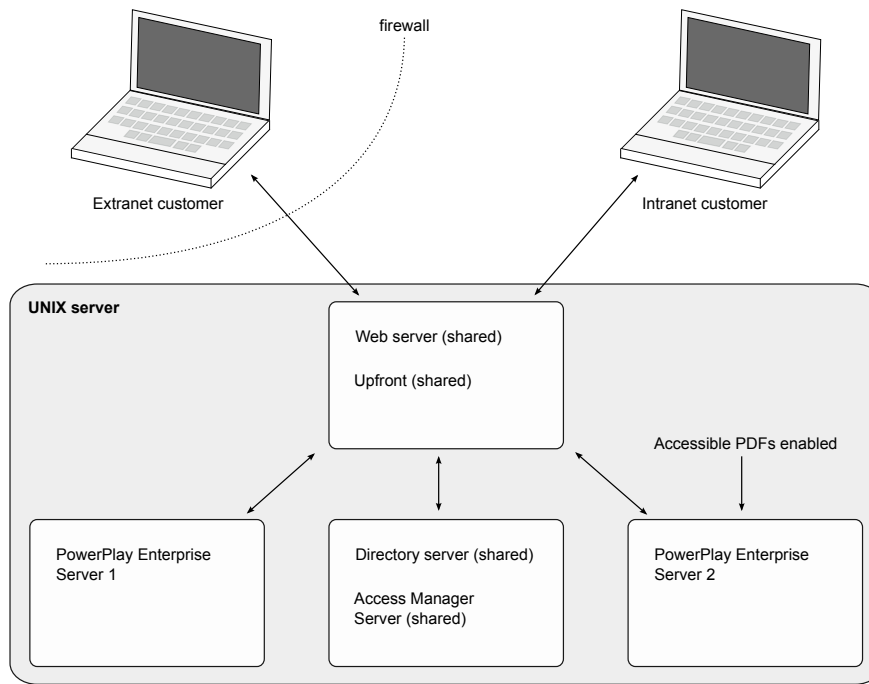
## Example: Using Multiple Server Groups in an Extranet and Intranet Environment

The Great Outdoors Company provides an application service for several large customers. These customers use an extranet connection to access reports and other information related to their business transactions with Great Outdoors. To protect the Great Outdoors systems, extranet connections occur through a firewall.

A dedicated report server supports external customers. The environment includes a shared Upfront NewsIndex. The system also includes a similar configuration to support internal Great Outdoors users. Shared security components are used for both external customers and internal users.

To enhance security, the server group that delivers content to the extranet customers is configured to use relative URLs. Instead of specifying this complete URL, a relative URL is abbreviated to exclude the server name and protocol. For more information about relative URLs, see [Configure Components to Use Relative URLs](#).

The following diagram illustrates the multiple server group environment that supports the delivery of content to the extranet and intranet users. To assist people with disabilities, accessibility is enabled for the reports available on the PowerPlay® Enterprise Server used by internal users. In this example, two PowerPlay server groups, and two Upfront server groups are installed on a single UNIX server.



## Ensure Successful Implementation of Multiple Server Groups

Before you implement a multiple server group environment, you should be familiar with several planning, installation, and configuration concepts and procedures. Because multiple server groups have some different characteristics compared to other types of IBM® Cognos® installation options, an understanding of these concepts and procedures will help to ensure that the implementation is successful.

### Plan the Multiple Server Group Implementation

Before you install any components, you should answer several questions. What is the goal you want to achieve with a multiple server group environment? What user groups are you supporting? What are the available system resources? What IBM Cognos products are you installing? Which user will own the shared processes?

You should document the results of the planning. For example, a topology diagram showing the server computers and the location of the various components is a valuable tool during installation and configuration.

For more information about topics such as IBM® Cognos® Series 7 architecture and installation strategies, see the *Planning Advanced Installations Guide*.

### Follow the Mandatory Requirements and Best Practices for Installing and Configuring Multiple Server Groups

After you complete the general planning, you should understand and follow the mandatory requirements and best practices that apply to your multiple server group implementation.

- ☐ Are you distributing components for each server group?
- Use the custom installation option to ensure that you do not install duplicate components. Installing unnecessary components, such as duplicate data stores or servers, may cause unex-

pected results or failures. For more information, see the *Installation Guide* included with your IBM Cognos Series 7 product.

- Use a server configuration file (*cern.csx*) that contains the same information to reduce the chances for problems related to configuration errors. By using a shared server configuration file, you apply a common configuration for all dispatchers and gateway. For more information, see ["Managing the Server Configuration File"](#) (p. 90).
  - ❑ Are you installing multiple server groups on a single server computer?
  - Do not accept default values for port numbers and component names. The components in multiple server group must use unique port numbers. For example, for multiple server groups, ensure that the data store name and data store port number are unique for each server group. For a list of default port numbers, see the *Planning Advanced Installations Guide*.
  - ❑ Are you accessing multiple server groups using a single Web server?
- Create additional Web aliases for gateways in the multiple server group. For more information see, ["Configuring Web Aliases"](#) (p. 100).

## Install and Configure Components for Multiple Server Groups

To implement multiple server groups, you install and then configure the required components. For details about each step, see the related topics in the *Installation Guide* included with your IBM Cognos Series 7 product.

### Steps

1. Install components.
2. Configure components.

The amount of configuration required depends on how the components are installed. Possible configuration requirements for multiple server group implementations include assigning unique port numbers and component names, configuring additional Web aliases, and managing a common server configuration file for distributed installations.

3. Test the installation.

Use your own data and reports, or the sample data and reports included with your IBM Cognos product, to test the installation. For more information, see the *Installation Testing and Samples Setup Guide*.

## Configure Components to Use Relative URLs

For some Web environments, it is important to not expose the name or IP address of the server computer to users either through the address bar in a browser, or in the source code of the displayed pages. By configuring your IBM® Cognos® products to use relative URLs, which do not include the server name or IP address, you reduce security risks. Also, relative URLs are required to support several common server architectures such as large scale environments where a router or proxy server is used to distribute loads between multiple Web server computers.

For more information about using relative URLs, including diagrams of example implementations such as the use of a proxy server, see the *Planning Advanced Installations Guide*.

**Note:** To use relative URLs for environments that include multiple server groups, all gateways must be installed on the same computer. Other related components can be installed on the same computer, or distributed on one or more different computers.

### Steps

1. In Configuration Manager, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
2. Expand **All Server Groups**.
3. For each server group, change the **Gateway URL** property to relative URL format.

By default the **Gateway URL** property includes the server name. For example:

`http://server_name/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe`

To use relative URLs, change the **Gateway URL** to the following format:

`/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe`

#### Notes:

- If you are using non-default Web aliases, the **Gateway URL** information is different from the example.
  - For IBM® Cognos® Visualizer, you must use the base URL of the proxy server, `http://hostname:port`.
4. In Upfront, use the **NewsItem Gateway Manager** to change the gateway references for existing NewsItems.

## Configure Components to Use Alternate Gateways

To improve Web server performance, you can configure IBM® Cognos® Web products to use alternate gateways that replace the default CGI programs. The alternate gateways are native server extensions for

- ISAPI to support Microsoft® Internet Information Services on Windows
- NSAPI to support Sun Java™ System Web Server on both Windows and UNIX®
- Apache mod to support Apache HTTP Server and IBM HTTP Server on both Windows and UNIX

To improve performance, we recommend that you use the same gateway type for all IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Version 5 products. For example, if you change Upfront to use the NSAPI gateway, change all other IBM Cognos product to use the NSAPI gateway option.

**Important:** If you are using a UNIX Web server, you must configure additional Web server settings. For more information, see the IBM Cognos *Solution Installation Guide*.

IBM Cognos Web products include the following alternate gateways:

Server Group	Prefix	Alternate Gateways
Impromptu Web Reports	imrap	imrapisapi.dll (Windows) imrapmod.dll (Windows) imrapmod.sl (HP-UX) imrapmod.so (AIX and Solaris) imrapmod22.dll (Windows) imrapmod22.sl (HP-UX) imrapmod22.so (AIX and Solaris) imrapnsapi.dll (Windows) imrapnsapi.sl (HP-UX) imrapnsapi.so (AIX and Solaris)
PowerPlay® Enterprise Server	ppds	ppdisapi.dll (Windows) ppdsmod.dll (Windows) ppdsmod.sl (HP-UX) ppdsmod.so (AIX and Solaris) ppdsmod22.dll (Windows) ppdsmod22.sl (HP-UX) ppdsmod22.so (AIX and Solaris) ppdsnsapi.dll (Windows) ppdsnsapi.sl (HP-UX) ppdsnsapi.so (AIX and Solaris)
IBM Cognos Visualizer Server	viz	vizisapi.dll (Windows) vizmod.dll (Windows) vizmod.sl (HP-UX) vizmod.so (AIX and Solaris) vizmod22.dll (Windows) vizmod22.sl (HP-UX) vizmod22.so (AIX and Solaris) viznsapi.dll (Windows) viznsapi.sl (HP-UX) viznsapi.so (AIX and Solaris)

Server Group	Prefix	Alternate Gateways
Upfront	upf	upfisapi.dll (Windows) upfmodi.dll (Windows) upfmod.sl (HP-UX) upfmod.so (AIX and Solaris) upfmodi22.dll (Windows) upfmod22.sl (HP-UX) upfmod22.so (AIX and Solaris) upfnsapi.dll (Windows) upfnsapi.sl (HP-UX) upfnsapi.so (AIX and Solaris)
Upfront File Manager	fm	fmisapi.dll (Windows) fmmod.dll (Windows) fmmod.sl (HP-UX) fmmod.so (AIX and Solaris) fmmod22.dll (Windows) fmmod22.sl (HP-UX) fmmod22.so (AIX and Solaris) fmnsapi.dll (Windows) fmnsapi.sl (HP-UX) fmnsapi.so (AIX and Solaris)
Access Manager Server	login	loginisapi.dll (Windows) loginmod.dll (Windows) loginmod.sl (HP-UX) loginmod.so (AIX and Solaris) loginmod22.dll (Windows) loginmod22.sl (HP-UX) loginmod22.so (AIX and Solaris) loginnsapi.dll (Windows) loginnsapi.sl (HP-UX) loginnsapi.so (AIX and Solaris)

Server Group	Prefix	Alternate Gateways
NoticeCast		NoticeCast server groups reference the Upfront gateway. If you change the Upfront gateway, you must also update the NoticeCast Gateway URL property.
Notification		Notification server groups reference the Upfront gateway. If you change the Upfront gateway, you must also update the Notification Gateway URL property.
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager		cognosisapi.dll (Windows)

## Configure ISAPI Gateways

To use ISAPI gateways you modify the gateway properties in Configuration Manager. If your environment includes reports published to Upfront using a different gateway, you must update the gateway settings in Upfront to use the new gateway.

Your Web server should be configured for use with IBM Cognos products before completing the following steps. For more information, see the installation guide included with your IBM Cognos Series 7 product.

**Note:** The PATH environment variable on the computer where the Web server is installed must include the full path for both the Cognos cgi-bin and bin directories. By default, these directories are located in `cognos\cern`.

### Steps to Change Gateway Properties in Configuration Manager

1. In Configuration Manager, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
 

**Note:** If you are updating a `cern.csx` file that you copied from a different computer, from the **Actions** menu, click **Read Server Configuration from File**, and then open the `cern.csx` file.
2. Expand **All Server Groups**.
3. For each server group, change the **Gateway URL** property to identify the ISAPI gateway.
 

Refer to the list of alternate gateways (p. 118) for the exact file name to use for each product. For example, by default, the **Gateway URL** for the Upfront gateway is:

```
http://server_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe
```

To use the ISAPI gateway, change the **Gateway URL** property to show the Upfront ISAPI gateway type:

```
http://server_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfisapi
```

**Note:** If you are using non-default Web aliases, the **Gateway URL** information is different from the example.
4. From the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Topology**.

5. For some distributed installations, you may have to import the server configuration file (*cern.csx*) to other computers to complete the configuration.
6. If you changed the gateway for an Upfront server group, complete the following steps.
7. Click the **Components** tab, and then expand **Upfront.Gateway.General**.
8. Modify the **Web Program Alias** to use the same setting you used for the Upfront Gateway URL on the **Server Configuration** tab.
9. From the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Selection**.

### Step to Change Gateway Properties in Upfront

- To change the gateway settings for reports published to Upfront prior to changing the gateway type, use the **NewItem Gateway Manager**, which is available from the Administration NewsBox in Upfront.

For more information, see the *IBM Cognos Web Portal User Guide*.

## Configure NSAPI Gateways

To use NSAPI gateways you modify the gateway properties in Configuration Manager and in the Sun Java™ System Web Server configuration files. If your environment includes reports published to Upfront using a different gateway, you must update the gateway settings in Upfront to use the new gateway.

### Steps to Change Gateway Properties in Configuration Manager

1. In Configuration Manager, click the **Server Configuration** tab.
2. Expand **All Server Groups**.
3. For each server group, change the **Gateway URL** property to identify the NSAPI gateway.  
Refer to the list of alternate gateways (p. 118) for the exact file name to use for each product.  
For example, by default, the **Gateway URL** for the Upfront gateway on Windows is:  
`http://server_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe`  
To use the NSAPI gateway, change the **Gateway URL** property to show the Upfront NSAPI gateway type:  
`http://server_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfnsapi`  
**Note:** If you are using non-default Web aliases, the **Gateway URL** information is different from the example.
4. From the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Topology**.
5. For distributed installations, you must import the server configuration file (*cern.csx*) on other computers to complete the configuration.
6. If you changed the gateway for an Upfront server group, complete the following steps.
7. Click the **Components** tab, and then expand **Upfront.Gateway.General**.

8. Modify the **Web Program Alias** to use the same setting you used for the Upfront **Gateway URL** on the **Server Configuration** tab.
9. From the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Selection**.

### Step to Change Gateway Properties in Upfront

- To change the gateway settings for reports published to Upfront prior to changing the gateway type, use the **NewsItem Gateway Manager**, which is available from the Administration NewsBox in Upfront.

For more information, see the *IBM Cognos Web Portal User Guide*.

## Change Sun Java System Web Server Settings for NSAPI Gateways

For Sun Java™ System Web Server, you must change several settings in configuration files installed with the Web server. For UNIX installations, you must also modify the start script.

The Sun Java System Web Server configuration files, `obj.conf` and `magnus.conf`, are installed in the `/config` folder of the Sun Java System Web Server installation.

**Note:** On Windows, the `PATH` environment variable on the computer where the Web server is installed must include the full path for both the Cognos `cgi-bin` and `bin` directories. By default, these directories are located in `cognos\cern`.

In the following steps, replace `<XX>` with the prefix of the IBM Cognos product you are configuring.

### Steps to Modify the Sun Java System Web Server `obj.conf` File

1. In `obj.conf`, for each IBM Cognos product, add the following `assign-name` directive in the '`<Object name="default">`' section before the '`NameTrans fn="pfx2dir" from="/cognos/cgi-bin"`' directive.

```
NameTrans fn="assign-name" name="<XX>nsapi" from="/cognos/cgi-bin/<XX>nsapi"
```

For example, the following `assign-name` directive is used to implement `nsapi` for PowerPlay Enterprise Server.

```
NameTrans fn="assign-name" name="ppdsnsapi" from="/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdsnsapi"
```

2. In `obj.conf`, for each IBM Cognos product, add the following object section after the '`<Object name="default">`' section.

```
<Object name="<XX>nsapi">
```

```
Service fn="<XX>nsapi" method="(POST|HEAD|GET)"
```

```
</Object>
```

For example, the following object section is used to implement `nsapi` for Upfront.

```
<Object name="upfnsapi">
```

```
Service fn="upfnsapi" method="(POST|HEAD|GET)"
```

```
</Object>
```

3. One NSAPI module services the entire set of server groups for multiple server group installations. In such a configuration, each server group is distinguished using a unique URL. For `n` server groups, you require `n` `NameTrans` mappings and `n` `Object` elements:

```
NameTrans fn="assign-name" name="
```

```
<XX>
nsapi<n>" from="< url prefix for nth group>/cgi-bin/
<XX>
nsapi*"
Each NameTrans has an associated Object element:
<Object name="
<XX>
nsapi<n>">
Service fn="
<XX>
nsapi" method="(POST|HEAD|GET)" GatewayDirectory="<path
to cgi-bin
for nth server group>"
</Object>
```

For example, the following section is used for PowerPlay Enterprise Server.

```
NameTrans fn="assign-name" name="
ppds
nsapi1" from="< url prefix for 1st group>/cgi-bin/
ppds
nsapi*"
<Object name="
ppds
nsapi1">
Service fn="
ppds
nsapi" method="(POST|HEAD|GET)" GatewayDirectory="<path
to cgi-bin
for 1st server group>"
</Object>
```

4. Add the following lines in the Init section of the magnus.conf file:

```
Init fn="load-modules" shlib="<CGI-BIN>
/<XX>nsapi.<EXT>
" funcs="<XX>nsapi,<XX>nsapi-init"
Init fn="<XX>nsapi-init" GatewayDirectory="<CGI-BIN>"
```

where

<CGI-BIN> is the full path to the installed Cognos cgi-bin directory

<EXT> This extension is based on the platform you are running on. For Windows 'dll', for HP-UX 'sl', and for AIX and Solaris 'so'.

This ensures that the NSAPI shared library gateways are loaded when you start your Web server.

For example, the following section is used to implement nsapi for PowerPlay Enterprise Server on Windows.

```
Init fn="load-modules" shlib="D:/Program Files/cognos/cern/cgi-bin/ppdsnsapi.
dll
"funcs="ppdsnsapi,ppdsnsapi-init"
```

```
Init fn="ppdsnsapi-init" GatewayDirectory="D:/Program
Files/cognos/cern/cgi-bin"
```

5. If you are running Solaris, append the following to the 'load-modules' directive.  

```
shlib_flags="(default|parent|group)"
```
6. In the magnus.conf, verify that the StackSize option is set to at least 300000.  
**Note:** You may experience performance issues with request transfers with StackSize values less than 400000.
7. On all UNIX platforms, create the following symbolic link from the directory that contains the obj.conf file by typing in the following command:  

```
ln -s /<installation_location>/cern/cgi-bin/*.enc ./
```
8. To apply the changes, restart the Web server.
9. If the Web server is installed on UNIX, complete the following steps to modify the start scripts.

### Steps to Modify the Start Script on UNIX

1. Modify the code at the top of your Web server's start script (below #!/bin/sh) to match the following. Replace <CGI-BIN> with the full path to the installed Cognos cgi-bin directory and <BIN> with the full path to the installed Cognos bin directory.

For HP-UX:

```
SHLIB_PATH=${SERVER_ROOT}/bin/${PRODUCT_NAME}/lib:${SHLIB_PATH}:<CGI-BIN>:
<BIN>;
export SHLIB_PATH
```

For Solaris:

```
LD_LIBRARY_PATH=${SERVER_ROOT}/bin/${PRODUCT_NAME}/lib:${LD_LIBRARY_PATH}:
<CGI-BIN>:<BIN>;
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

For AIX:

```
LIBPATH=${SERVER_ROOT}/bin/${PRODUCT_NAME}/lib:${LIBPATH}:<CGI-BIN>:<BIN>;
export LIBPATH
```

2. If you are running the Sun Java™ System Web server on AIX, change the following line in the start script  

```
LIBPATH=${LIBPATH}:${LD_LIBRARY_PATH}:/usr/lib/threads:/usr/ibmcxx/lib:/usr/
lib:/lib;
export LIBPATH
```

  
to  

```
LIBPATH=${LIBPATH}:/usr/lib/threads :/usr/ibmcxx/lib:/usr/lib:/lib;
export LIBPATH
```
3. To apply the changes, restart the Web server.

## Configure Apache Module Gateways

The Apache Module API is supported for Apache HTTP Server and IBM HTTP Server.

To use Apache module gateways you must update the gateway properties in Configuration Manager and modify Web server configuration files. Also, if your environment includes reports published to Upfront using a different gateway, you must update the gateway settings in Upfront to use the new gateway.

**Note:** If your IBM Cognos environment is already configured to use Apache mod gateways with Apache HTTP Server 2.0, and you upgrade to Apache HTTP Server 2.2, you do not have to change Configuration Manager gateway properties or update the gateway settings in Upfront. You must complete the steps to modify to the Apache HTTP Server 2.2 configuration files ([p. 127](#)).

Your Web server should be configured for use with IBM Cognos products before completing the following steps. For more information, see the IBM Cognos Series 7 *Installation Guide*.

### Steps to Change Gateway Properties in Configuration Manager

1. In Configuration Manager, click the **Server Configuration** tab.

**Note:** If you are updating a *cern.csx* file that you copied from a different computer, from the **Actions** menu, click **Read Server Configuration from File**, and then open the *cern.csx* file.

2. Expand **All Server Groups**.

3. For each server group, change the **Gateway URL** property to identify the Apache mod gateway.

Refer to the list of alternate gateways ([p. 118](#)) for the exact file name to use for each product.

For example, by default, the **Gateway URL** for the Upfront gateway on Windows is:

`http://server_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe`

To use the Apache mod gateway, change the **Gateway URL** property to show the Upfront Apache mod gateway type:

`http://server_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfmod`

**Note:** If you are using non-default Web aliases, the **Gateway URL** information is different from the example.

4. From the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Topology**.
5. For some distributed installations, you may have to import the server configuration file (*cern.csx*) on other computers to complete the configuration.
6. If you changed the gateway for an Upfront server group, complete the following steps.
7. Click the **Components** tab, and then expand **Upfront.Gateway.General**.
8. Modify the **Web Program Alias** to use the same setting you used for the Upfront **Gateway URL** on the **Server Configuration** tab.
9. From the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Selection**.

### Step to Change Gateway Properties in Upfront

- To change the gateway settings for reports published to Upfront prior to changing the gateways, use the **NewsItem Gateway Manager**, which is available from the Administration NewsBox in Upfront.

For more information, see the IBM Cognos *Web Portal User Guide*.

## Change the Apache HTTP Server or IBM HTTP Server Settings for Apache Module Gateways

You must change several settings in the `httpd.conf` configuration file and, for UNIX installations, in the `envvars` shell script. The `httpd.conf` file is installed in the `conf` directory and the `envvars` shell script in the `bin` directory of the Web server installation.

**Note:** On Windows, the `PATH` environment variable on the computer where the Web server is installed must include the full path for both the Cognos `cgi-bin` and `bin` directories. By default, these directories are located in `cognos\cern`.

In the following steps, replace `<XX>` with the prefix of the IBM Cognos product you are configuring.

### Steps to Modify the `httpd.conf` Configuration File

1. From the `/conf` directory of the Web server installation, open the `httpd.conf` file in a text editor and locate the section that defines the aliases for the IBM Cognos installation.

For more information about configuring Web servers, see the IBM Cognos Series 7 *Installation Guide*.

2. For each IBM Cognos product, add the code required to load the Apache mod shared library gateways when you start the Web Server:

- If you are using Apache HTTP Server version 2.0 or an IBM HTTP Server, use the following format:

```
LoadModule
<XX>mod_module <CGI-BIN>/<XX>mod.<EXT>
    <XX>GatewayDirectory <CGI-BIN>
    <Location /cognos/cgi-bin/<XX>mod*>
        SetHandler <XX>
    </Location>
```

- If you are using Apache HTTP Server version 2.2, use the following format:

```
LoadModule <XX>mod_module
<CGI-BIN>/<XX>mod22.<EXT>
    <XX>GatewayDirectory <CGI-BIN>
    <Location /cognos/cgi-bin/<XX>mod*>
        SetHandler <XX>
    </Location>
```

where

`<XX>` is the prefix of the IBM Cognos product you are configuring.

`<EXT>` is the extension based on the platform you are running on: for Windows `"dll"`, for HP-UX `"sl"`, and for AIX and Solaris `"so"`.

For example, the following code can be used with an Apache HTTP Server version 2.0 to implement the Apache Mod gateway for PowerPlay Enterprise server.

```
#Generic for all IBM Cognos products.
```

```
ScriptAlias /cognos/cgi-bin "D:/Program Files/cognos/cern/cgi-bin"
```

```
Alias /cognos/help "D:/Program Files/cognos/cern/Documentation"
Alias /cognos "D:/Program Files/cognos/cern/webcontent"
#Specific for each IBM Cognos product.
LoadModule ppdsmod_module D:/Program Files/cognos/cern/cgi-bin/ppdsmod.dll
    ppdsGatewayDirectory D:/Program Files/cognos/cern/cgi-bin
    <Location /cognos/cgi-bin/ppdsmod*>
        SetHandler ppds
    </Location>
```

3. If you are configuring multiple server groups, add the following line after `SetHandler <XX>` parameter:

```
<XX>GroupGatewayDirectory /<CGI-BIN>
```

**Note:** If you configure PowerPlay Enterprise Server using the `<XX>` parameter, you will receive the following error message:

```
Invalid command ' <XX>GroupGatewayDirectory', perhaps
mis-spelled
or defined by a module not included in the server configuration
```

When configuring the Apache mod gateways for PowerPlay Enterprise Server for multiple server groups, we recommend you use the parameter "`<XX>GatewayDirectory`" instead of "`<XX>GroupGatewayDirectory`".

4. To apply the changes, restart the Web server.

### Steps to Modify the envvars Shell Script on UNIX

1. In `envvars`, for HP-UX, add the following code to the top of the script:

```
LD_PRELOAD=/usr/lib/libc1.sl:/usr/lib/libpthread.sl
export LD_PRELOAD
```

2. In the following lines of code, replace `<BIN>` with the full path to the installed Cognos bin directory, and `<CGI-BIN>` with the full path to the installed Cognos cgi-bin directory, and `<APACHE-LIB>` with the full path to the Apache HTTP Server lib directory.

For HP-UX:

```
SHLIB_PATH="${SHLIB_PATH} :<BIN>:<CGI-BIN>:<APACHE-LIB>"
```

For AIX:

```
LIBPATH="${LIBPATH} :<BIN>:<CGI-BIN>:<APACHE-LIB>"
```

For Solaris:

```
LD_LIBRARY_PATH="${LD_LIBRARY_PATH} :<BIN>:<CGI-BIN>:<APACHE-LIB>"
```

3. To apply the changes, restart the Apache HTTP Server.

## Enable Accessibility Support

IBM® Cognos® is committed to assisting people with disabilities, and promotes initiatives that make workplaces and technologies accessible.

To create reports accessible to disabled users, you must enable accessibility in Configuration Manager. The following properties control the format of PDF reports.

Component	Property Location
Impromptu®	<b>Command Line Interface</b>
	IBM Cognos Impromptu.Impromptu Administrator.Accessibility.Accessible PDF
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
Impromptu Web Reports	Components.IBM Cognos Impromptu.Impromptu.Accessibility.Accessible PDF
	Components.IBM Cognos Impromptu.Impromptu Administrator.Accessibility.Accessible PDF
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
PowerPlay® Enterprise Server	Components.IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Server.Accessibility.Accessible PDF
	Components.IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Server.Accessibility.Accessible PDF
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
PowerPlay® Enterprise Server	Components.PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.Accessibility.Accessible PDF
	Components.PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.Accessibility.Accessible PDF
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
PowerPlay® Enterprise Server	Components.PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.Accessibility.Accessible PDF
	Components.PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.Accessibility.Accessible PDF
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>

## Notes

- PDF documents that support software accessibility guidelines contain additional markup information that increases the size of the PDF file produced and, as a result, may impact performance.
- If you change the setting for Accessible PDF, existing saved report output in PDF format is not affected. In order to create PDF files that include accessibility markup tags, you must re-run your reports and re-save the output.

For more information about considerations for accessible reports, see the Impromptu Administration Guide and the PowerPlay Enterprise Server Guide.

## Managing Locale Formats

To ensure consistent locale formatting, especially when you are distributing information across a network or over the Web, you may need to change the default locale formats. By understanding how your Series 7 product formats data, you can decide whether to complete any of these tasks:

- Change default configuration settings ([p. 131](#)).
- Edit the locale format configuration file ([p. 131](#)).

### Default Locale Formats

How your Series 7 product determines locale formats depends on the product you are installing. The default configuration for server products is based on a locale format configuration file. For client products, the default configuration uses Windows Regional Settings. However, you can configure client products to use the locale format specification file instead of Windows Regional Settings.

The Suite configuration option specifies that format information is based on the locale format configuration file. The Standalone configuration option specifies that the Windows Regional Settings are used.

Product	Default setting	Alternative setting
PowerPlay Enterprise Server	Suite	None
Impromptu® Web Reports	Suite	None
IBM® Cognos® Visualizer Server	Suite	None
Impromptu	Suite	None
PowerPlay Transformer	Standalone	Suite
PowerPlay for Windows	Standalone	Suite
IBM Cognos Visualizer Authoring	Standalone	None

### Locale Format Configuration File

All IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Version 5 installations include a locale format configuration file, named cerlocale.xml. This file provides more options for managing data formatting for both single computer installations and complex distributed installations that support applications accessed by a global audience. The cerlocale.xml file and the related schema file, cerlocale.xsd, are UTF-8 encoded XML files.

For most installations, you do not have to open or modify the locale format configuration file. The default format definitions for numbers, currencies, time, and dates are based on recognized conventions and are appropriate for most environments.

You use Configuration Manager to select one of the locales included in the locale format configuration file. When you create or run a report, data formatting is based on the locale specified for the product you are using.

For some environments, you may want to modify the locale format definitions. Because the locale format configuration files are in XML format, you can use an XML editor to modify format definitions. You should use an XML editor that includes a validating parser. If you modify the `cerlocale.xml` file, copy the changes to other computers in your Series 7 installation to ensure data consistency (p. 131).

## Use the Same Source for Default Locale Format Information

If your Series 7 environment includes both server and client products, we recommend that you configure all products to use the same source for locale format information. To do this, you must change the default configuration settings for PowerPlay User and PowerPlay Transformer.

### Steps

1. Start Configuration Manager.
2. Change the following properties on each computer as required from the default, Standalone, to Suite.

The Suite configuration option specifies that format information is based on the locale format configuration file. The Standalone configuration option specifies that the Windows Regional Settings are used.

Product	Location
PowerPlay for Windows	Cognos PowerPlay.General.Locale Mode
PowerPlay Transformer	Cognos PowerPlay Transformer.Locale Access Options.Locale Mode

3. From the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Selection**.

## Edit the Locale Format Configuration File

Because the locale format configuration file is in XML format, you have the option of modifying existing locale information, or adding new locales, as required for your environment.

To edit the `cerlocale.xml` file, we recommend that you use an XML editor that includes a validating parser. The use of a validating XML editor helps to ensure that the `cerlocale.xml` file remains well formed according to standard XML specifications and selected options are validated against the schema file, `cerlocale.xsd`. With other types of editors, non-validating XML editors or text editors, a user may introduce errors in the `cerlocale.xml` file that will cause unexpected results in your installation.

When editing the `cerlocale.xml` file, modify only the string information, do not change other information. Also, because XML is case-sensitive, do not change the text format. The editor must support UTF-8 encoding.

For more information about the contents of the `cerlocale.xml` file, see ["Cerlocale Schema Elements" \(p. 327\)](#).

You can copy `cerlocale.xml` and `cerlocale.xsd` to a different location for editing. After you complete and validate the changes, copy `cerlocale.xml` back to your IBM® Cognos® software installation location.

### Steps

1. Create a backup copy of the `cerlocale.xml` file.  
By default, the `cerlocale.xml` file is installed to *installation\_location/cer5/bin*
2. Open the `cerlocale.xml` file in an XML editor.
3. Make the required changes and then validate them against the `cerlocale.xsd` file.
4. Save the `cerlocale.xml` file.
5. If you copied the `cerlocale.xml` file to a different location for editing, copy the file back to the `cer5/bin` location.
6. Copy the modified `cerlocale.xml` file to the `cer6/bin` location on all computers that include Series 7 Version 5 installations.

This action ensures consistency in data formats. For more information about ensuring consistency in data formats, see ["Use the Same Source for Default Locale Format Information" \(p. 131\)](#).

---

# Chapter 5: IBM Cognos Shared Components Settings

---

Several IBM® Cognos® products share components that you need to configure only once. Use the IBM Cognos Shared component in Configuration Manager to configure these common components.

## Important and Common Changes

You must apply the IBM® Cognos® Shared settings in Windows® ([p. 27](#)) or in UNIX® ([p. 47](#)) to update your environment with any changes.

## Locale Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Locale

Property	Default value	Description
Locale	en-us	The locale used by IBM Cognos server products
Native Locale	<b>Windows</b>	The current locale in use on this computer
	enu_usa.1252	
	<b>UNIX</b>	
Encoding	en_US	The encoding used by IBM Cognos server products
	<b>Windows</b>	
	windows-1252	
	<b>UNIX</b>	
	iso-8859-1	

## Location Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Location

Property	Default value	Description
JRE Path (Windows only)	<i>installation_location\bin\jre\6.0sr6</i>	The location of the Java™ runtime environment files used by IBM® Cognos® products except IBM® Cognos® NoticeCast.  <b>Note:</b> For the location of the JRE used by IBM Cognos NoticeCast, see IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Shared.NoticeCast Environment.Java Runtime Environment.
Java Command (UNIX® only)	java	Available to add a path if needed.
Browser Command (UNIX only)	none	Available to add a path if needed.
Web Content Path	<i>installation_location\webcontent</i>	The location of IBM Cognos Web pages.
Install	<i>installation_location\bin</i>	The location of installed executable files.
IBM Cognos Components	<i>installation_location</i>	The location of installed IBM Cognos components for Common Logon.

Property	Default value	Description
Cognos.ini Directory	<i>installation_location\.</i>	Specifies the directory location of the Cognos.ini file. This file stores connection strings for sample data and your production database servers. By default, a value is set when installing most product samples. However, the value might be lost when uninstalling older versions of IBM® Cognos® Series 7. The value can be left empty when sample databases are not installed or when the only components installed do not use Cognos.ini for connecting to a database.
Common Logon	<i>installation_location\</i> <i>CommonLogon\bin</i>	The location of IBM Cognos Windows Common Logon Server.
Documentation	<i>installation_location\</i> <i>documentation</i>	The location of installed IBM Cognos documentation.
Samples	<i>installation_location\cern</i>	The location of installed IBM Cognos samples.
Quick Tours	none	The location of installed IBM Cognos Quick Tours.
Temporary Directory Server Setup Files	none	Read-only property.  Specifies the location where the directory server setup program is launched when applying configuration for the "Install and Configure Sun Java System Directory Server" installation.

## Rendition Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Rendition

Property	Default value	Description
Company	Cognos	The name of the company.
Name	<i>cern</i>	The rendition of the IBM® Cognos® Series 7 version.

## Runtime Parameters Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters

The following table applies to both the graphical user interface and the command line interface.

Property	Default value	Description
Encrypt	False	Specifies whether to encrypt the server configuration file

### Server Configuration

In the command line interface only, there is an additional object:

IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration

You can configure settings in IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration. For more information, see ["IBM Cognos Server Group Settings" \(p. 309\)](#).

For information on configuring server groups using the graphical user interface, see ["Configuring IBM Cognos Server Groups" \(p. 31\)](#).

## Server Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Server

Property	Default value	Description
Host	The name of your computer	The name of the computer on which the server is installed.
Operating System	The operating system on your computer.	<p>The operating system of the computer being configured.</p> <p>You can change the operating system by clicking <b>Specify Computer</b> from the <b>Actions</b> menu.</p>

---

## Chapter 6: Administration Settings

---

The Administration category in Configuration Manager contains properties for the different IBM® Cognos® server administration tools.

### Important and Common Changes

You must apply the Administration settings in Windows® (p. 27) or in UNIX® (p. 47) to update your environment with any changes.

### IBM Cognos Visualizer - Server Administration

You can configure the following categories for IBM® Cognos® Visualizer Server Administration.

#### General Properties

Object Hierarchy: Administration.IBM Cognos Visualizer - Server Administration.General

Property	Default value	Description
Java™ Runtime Environment Location (Windows only)	<i>installation_location/bin/jre/6.0sr6</i>	The path to the Java Runtime Environment
Help Location	<i>http://computername/cognos/help/html/viz/en/</i>	The URL to the IBM Cognos Visualizer help
Book Location	<i>installation_location/documentation/</i>	The path to the IBM Cognos Visualizer books

### Deployment Manager

You can configure the following categories for Deployment Manager.

#### Default Folder Locations Properties

Object Hierarchy: Administration.Deployment Manager.Default Folder Locations

Property	Default value	Description
Packlet Folder	<i>../packlets</i>	The default folder where packlets are stored

Property	Default value	Description
Packages Folder	<i>installation_location</i> \ packages	The default folder where packages are stored

## Mirrored/Mapped Servers

Object Hierarchy: Administration.Deployment Manager.Mirrored/Mapped Servers

Property	Default value	Description
Enable Mirrored/ Mapped Server Deployment	no	Specifies whether Deployment Manager will use server:port or a mirrored or mapped server:port

## Time-out Values Properties

Object Hierarchy: Administration.Deployment Manager.Time-out Values

Property	Default value	Description
Timeout value (in seconds) for responses	120	The number of seconds to wait for a response.
Timeout value (in seconds) for ping response	15	The number of seconds to wait for a ping response.

## Troubleshooting Properties

Object Hierarchy: Administration.Deployment Manager.Troubleshooting

Property	Default value	Description
Audit Log Level	0	Deployment Manager audit log level. The value 0 indicates that basic information is recorded in the log, while 10 indicates the greatest level of detail.

Property	Default value	Description
Trace Level	0	Deployment Manager advanced tracing level. The value 0 indicates that basic information is recorded in the log, while 10 indicates the greatest level of detail.

## Impromptu Web Reports - Administration

You can configure the following categories for Impromptu® Web Reports - Administration.

### General Properties

Object Hierarchy: Administration.Impromptu Web Reports - Administration.General

Property	Default value	Description
Help Location	<code>http://computernamel cognos/help</code>	The URL to the Impromptu Web Reports Administration Help

## NoticeCast Administration

You can configure the following categories for NoticeCast Administration.

### Logging Properties

Object Hierarchy: Administration.NoticeCast Administration.Logging

Property	Default value	Description
Administration Log File Name	<code>ncadmin.log</code>	The name of the NoticeCast Administration log file. Each time the administration tool starts, this file is recreated. A backup of the previous file is saved.
Administration Logging Detail	<code>critical</code>	The level of detail to log: fatal (least detail), critical, warning, info, or debug (most detail).

Property	Default value	Description
Maximum Administration Log File Size	512000	The maximum size in bytes of an Administration Log File. If this size is reached, a new file is created and a backup of a previous file is saved.

## NoticeCast Administration Properties

Object Hierarchy: Administration.NoticeCast Administration.NoticeCast Administration

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Connection File	ms_connection.conf	<p>The name of the file containing the data store connection settings.</p> <p>To change the actual connection settings, go to the IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store settings (<a href="#">p. 172</a>).</p>
Drivers List	com.jnetdirect.jsql. JSQLDriver,oracle.jdbc.driver. OracleDriver,COM.ibm.db2. jdbc.net.DB2Driver	List of drivers available for selection for databases
Java™ Runtime Command	jre\6.0sr6\bin\java.exe	<p>The location of the Java Runtime Environment executable files.</p> <p>You should not need to change this value.</p>
NoticeCast Server Name	Your computer name	<p>The name of the computer running the NoticeCast Data Store server.</p> <p>This property can be changed.</p>
NoticeCast Server Port	10999	<p>The port number used by the NoticeCast Data Store server.</p> <p>This property can be changed if there is a port conflict.</p>

Property	Default value	Description
Endorsed Location	<i>installation_location/bin/endorsed</i>	Location of endorsed directory

## PowerPlay Enterprise - Server Administration

You can configure the following categories for PowerPlay® Enterprise - Server Administration.

Object Hierarchy: Administration.PowerPlay Enterprise - Server Administration.General

Property	Default value	Description
Java™ Runtime Environment Location (Windows only)	<i>installation_location/bin/jre/6.0sr6/lib/</i>	The path to the Java Runtime Environment
Qualified Java Executable Name (UNIX® only)	java	The qualified path to the Java executable
Access Manager Location (Windows only)	<i>installation_location/bin/</i>	The path to Access Manager
Browser Command (optional) (UNIX only)	none	The qualified path to a browser
Books Location	<i>installation_location/documentation</i>	The path to the PowerPlay books
Help Location	<i>http://computername/ cognos/help/html/ppwb/en/</i>	The URL to the PowerPlay Help

## Upfront Server - Administration

You can configure the following categories for Upfront Server Administration.

### General Properties

Object Hierarchy: Administration.Upfront - Server Administration.General

Property	Default value	Description
Server Administration Port	8031	The port number used by the Upfront administration tool

Property	Default value	Description
Help Location	<code>http://computername/cognos/help/html/upfront/en/</code>	The URL to the Upfront Help

---

# Chapter 7: IBM Cognos Impromptu Settings

---

Use the IBM® Cognos® Impromptu® component in Configuration Manager to configure the Impromptu and Impromptu Administrator components. You can change properties in these components such as your workspace location.

## Important and Common Changes

This is a Windows® application which you should not have to configure. However, you must apply the IBM® Cognos® Impromptu® settings in Windows (p. 27) or in UNIX® (p. 47) to update your environment with any changes.

You may need to change the following properties:

- Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server.Computer (p. 238)

## Impromptu

You can configure the following categories for Impromptu® User.

### Accessibility Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu.Impromptu.Accessibility

Property	Default value	Description
Accessible PDF	False	Select True to generate PDF-format reports that can be read by a screen reader.

### General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu.Impromptu.General

Property	Default value	Description
Default Page Size	Letter	The default page size
Workspace (Windows® only)	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\ User Workspace	The working directory where the user creates reports and macros

Property	Default value	Description
Default Templates (Windows only)	<i>installation_location</i> \Samples\Impromptu\templates\standard\simple list.imt	The default report templates
Picklist Limit	100	<p>The maximum number of prompts that can be select for a report.</p> <p>This property is ignored in multi-select prompts when the <b>Allow the user to select all values</b> option is selected.</p>

## Impromptu Administrator

You can configure the following categories for Impromptu® Administrator.

### Accessibility Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu.Impromptu Administrator.Accessibility

Property	Default value	Description
Accessible PDF	False	Select True to generate PDF-format reports that can be read by a screen reader.

### General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu.Impromptu Administrator.General

Property	Default value	Description
Default Page Size	Letter	The default page size
Workspace (Windows® only)	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\ User Workspace	The working directory where the user creates reports and macros
ReportPath	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\ User Workspace	The first location to search for a report when you click <b>Open</b> from the <b>File</b> menu

Property	Default value	Description
lastUsed Catalog (Windows only)	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\User Workspace	The location of the catalog most recently used in an Impromptu session
UserTemplatesPath (Windows only)	<i>installation_location</i> \Samples\Impromptu\templates	The location of templates to be used in the <b>New</b> dialog box
Workgroup TemplatesPath (Windows only)	<i>installation_location</i> \Samples\Impromptu\templates	The location of shared templates to be used in the <b>New</b> dialog box
Default Templates (Windows only)	<i>installation_location</i> \Samples\Impromptu\templates\standard\simple list.imt	The location of default templates to be used to create a new report
Picklist Limit	100	<p>The maximum number of prompts that can be select for a report.</p> <p>This property is ignored in multi-select prompts when the <b>Allow the user to select all values option is selected.</b></p>



---

# Chapter 8: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports Settings

---

IBM® Cognos® Impromptu® Web Reports provides the tools needed to put Impromptu reports on the Web. Users need only a Web browser to view or run Impromptu reports. Upfront, the IBM® Cognos® Web portal, provides the Impromptu Web Reports user interface, giving users a consistent way of working with reports on the Web. Reports can be viewed in .pdf, .xls, .csv, or HTML format.

Impromptu Web Reports consists of multiple components, including

- the main components (Impromptu Web Reports Server, gateway, and data store)
- the Impromptu Web Reports tools and the administration tools
- several common components, such as the Access Manager Server and Upfront, that are shared with other IBM Cognos products

Along with Impromptu Web Reports, IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Reporting includes Impromptu Administrator, which provides additional administration tools, such as PowerPrompts Developer Studio.

Impromptu Web Reports also requires a separate installation of ObjectStore, which is the third-party database used as the Impromptu Web Reports data store.

## Important and Common Changes

Before you can add a new server to an Impromptu® Web Reports server group you must

- install ObjectStore
- install Impromptu Web Reports server on the host computer
- apply the appropriate Impromptu Web Reports server properties
- start the services on the host computer
- ensure there is network connectivity between the new server and the remote Impromptu Web Reports database host

You must apply the IBM® Cognos® Impromptu Web Reports settings in Windows® (p. 27) or in UNIX® (p. 47) to update your environment with any changes.

You may need to change the following Impromptu Web Reports properties:

- IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Common.Database (p. 151)

## Default Ports for Impromptu Web Reports Components

### Default Ports in Windows

IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Reporting uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default port
Sun Java™ System Directory Server	389
Access Manager Server ticket service	9010
Access Manager Server authentication service	8070
Web server	80
Impromptu® Web Reports server	8020
Upfront search engine	4455
Notification server	5020
Upfront dispatcher	8030
Upfront server administration	8031
Upfront remote tracing	8032
Upfront data store	8150
Upfront File Manager	8030
ObjectStore	• 51025
• Server	• 51031
• Cache Manager (server)	• 51041
• Cache Manager (client)	• 51050
• Notifications	
PowerPrompts	2424
• Test server	2425
• Data access server	

### Default Ports in UNIX

IBM Cognos Series 7 Reporting uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default Port
Sun Java™ System Directory Server	1389
Access Manager Server ticket service	9010
Access Manager Server authentication service	8070
Web server	80
Impromptu Web Reports server	8020
Virtual Xserver	9050
Upfront search engine	4455
Notification server	5020
Upfront dispatcher	8030
Upfront server administration	8031
Upfront remote tracing	8032
Upfront data store	8150
Upfront File Manager	8030
ObjectStore	• 52525
• Server	• 52531
• Cache Manager (server)	• 52541
• Cache Manager (client)	• 52550
• Notifications	
PowerPrompts	2425
data access server	

## Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation

The following table contains some of the more common components that you may want to install on separate computers. Associated with each component is the place in the object hierarchy where you should modify the location of each category if required.

Component	Object hierarchy location
Directory server	Services.Access Manager - Directory Server. General.Computer Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server.Computer
Access Manager Server	Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.Primary Ticket Service  <b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary tickets services. Services.Access Manager - Web Authentication.Authentication Services.Primary Authentication Service.Host  <b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary authentication services.
Upfront gateway	<b>Command Line Interface</b>  IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.Upfront.Upfront Server Group.gateway  By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>  <b>Graphical User Interface</b>  Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Upfront Server Group.Gateway URL  By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>
Impromptu® Web Reports gateway	<b>Command Line Interface</b>  IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.IWR Server Group.gateway  By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/imrap.cgi</code>  <b>Graphical User Interface</b>  Server Configuration.All Server Groups.IWR Server Group.Gateway URL  By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/imrap.cgi</code>

For information about server configuration, see ["IBM Cognos Server Group Settings" \(p. 309\)](#).

## Common

You can configure the following categories for the Common component.

### Database Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu® Web Reports.Common.Database

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Location	<b>Windows</b> <i>installation_location\iwr\</i> database <b>UNIX</b> <i>installation_location/iwr/</i> database	The location of the Impromptu Web Reports data store
Data Store Host	The name of the local computer.	The name of the computer on which the data store is installed

## Logging

You can configure the following categories for the Common component.

### IWR Log Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Common.Logging.IWR Log

Property	Default value	Description
Log File Location	<b>Windows</b> <i>installation_location\ Logs</i> <b>UNIX</b> <i>installation_location/logs</i>	The location of the Impromptu Web Reports log files.  When SQL logging is enabled, SQL log files are placed in this location. The SQL log output is appended to a file whose name is specified when SQL logging is enabled. SQL log output will not be added to the iwr.log file unless this file is specified when SQL logging is enabled. For more information about SQL logging, see <i>Upfront User and Developer Guides</i> .

Property	Default value	Description
Enabled	Yes	Specifies whether Impromptu Web Reports activity is recorded in the log file
Filename	iwr.log	The name of the Impromptu Web Reports log file
MaxLogSize	1024	<p>The maximum size in kilobytes of the Impromptu Web Reports log file. When this size is reached, a new log file is created. Old log files are saved until the MaxDirSize is exceeded.</p> <p>Note: SQL log files have no maximum size limit.</p>
MaxDirSize	2048	<p>The maximum size in kilobytes of the Log File Location. The oldest log file is deleted when the MaxDirSize is exceeded.</p> <p>Note: SQL log files are an exception, they are not deleted when the Log File Location directory surpasses its maximum size.</p>
Severity Filter	15	Specifies the severity of messages sent to each logging mechanism. For more information about the available severity levels, see Impromptu Web Reports <i>Administrator Guide</i> .

## Windows Event Log Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Common.Logging.Windows Event Log

Property	Default value	Description
Enabled	Yes	Specifies whether Impromptu Web Reports activity is recorded in the Windows Event log.
Severity Filter	15	Specifies the severity of messages sent to each logging mechanism. For more information about the available severity levels, see Impromptu Web Reports <i>Administrator Guide</i> .

## Server Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Common.Server

Property	Default value	Description
IWR Server Group Name	IWR Server Group	This is the server group to which the server belongs.

## Data Store

The Impromptu® Web Reports data store is an ObjectStore database that stores the report information for an Impromptu Web Reports server or an entire server group. It also contains a reference to the default namespace stored in Access Manager and the names of the Impromptu Web Reports server group and the Upfront server group that the Impromptu Web Reports server group uses.

ObjectStore is a third-party product that is provided on the IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Reporting CD. It must be installed separately before installing Impromptu Web Reports. It can then be configured as the Impromptu Web Reports data store after installing Impromptu Web Reports.

You can configure the following categories for the Data Store component.

## Copy Data Store Schema Files Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Data Store.Create Data Store.Copy Data Store Schema Files

Property	Default value	Description
Target Data Store Location	<b>Windows</b> <i>installation_location\iwr\</i> database <b>UNIX</b> <i>installation_location/iwr/</i> database	The location to which database schema files are copied

## Create Data Store Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Data Store.Create Data Store.Create Data Store

**Note:** There are no properties to configure for this category.

## Create Data Store Location Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Data Store.Create Data Store.Create Data Store Location

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Location	<b>Windows</b> <i>installation_location\iwr\</i> database <b>UNIX</b> <i>installation_location/iwr/</i> database	The location where the database is created

## Gateway

The Impromptu® Web Reports gateway is, by default, a Common Gateway Interface (CGI) program that receives requests from Web browsers. The gateway communicates directly with the Impromptu Web Reports server. When the server finishes processing the request, the Impromptu Web Reports gateway returns the report to the Web browser.

Impromptu Web Reports also includes alternate ISAPI and NSAPI gateways. For more information, see ["Configure Components to Use Alternate Gateways"](#) (p. 118).

The CGI gateway stores runtime load balancing data in the file iwrlb.dat in the <installation location>/cern/cgi-bin directory. For the CGI gateway, the user running the web server must have write privileges for this file. The Apache module, NSAPI, and ISAPI in-progress gateways do not use this file.

You can configure the following categories for the Gateway component.

## General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Gateway.General

Property	Default value	Description
Request Timeout	60000	The number of milliseconds to wait for a successful reply
Connection Timeout	0	The number of milliseconds to wait when connecting to the dispatcher
Cache XLS and CSV files in Internet Explorer Browser	Yes	Specifies whether the browser caches the XLS and CSV files Values: Yes (enabled) or No (disabled)

## Server

The Impromptu® Web Reports server queues, schedules, and runs Impromptu Web Reports. You can have one or more Impromptu Web Reports servers, each installed on a single computer. A group of Impromptu Web Reports servers that work together is called a server group. Each Impromptu Web Reports server group must communicate with only one data store, a single namespace on the directory server, one ticket service, and be associated with a single Upfront server group.

You can configure the following categories for the Server service.

## Accessibility Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Server.Accessibility

Property	Default value	Description
Accessible PDF	False	Select True to generate PDF-format reports that can be read by a screen reader.

## Auditing Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Server.Auditing

Property	Default value	Description
Audit File Location	<i>installation_location</i> \Logs\Audit	The location of the audit file

Property	Default value	Description
Number of Rows to Commit	10	The number of rows that can be committed in an audit file
Max File size	50	The maximum size in KB of the audit file

## Dispatcher Tuning Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Server.Dispatcher Tuning

Property	Default value	Description
Request Thread Pool Size	50	The size of the pool of threads that the IWR dispatcher uses to handle requests
Dispatcher Cleanup Frequency (Seconds)	3600	The non-zero time interval between cleanups. Removes unused report view URLs and old drill-through filters

## General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Server.General

Property	Default value	Description
Default Page Size	Letter	The default page size.
Upfront Server Group Name	Upfront Server Group	The Upfront server group that Impromptu Web Reports interacts with
Prompt Request ImpServer Pool Size	1	The number of ImpServer processes started ahead of time for interactive prompt requests

Property	Default value	Description
Display (UNIX only)	3050	The port for Virtual Xserver.  6000 will be added to the port number you have entered. For example, if you enter Port 3000 in this property, it will automatically use port 9000. Port numbers over 32767 are not valid.
Maximum time for the Report Execution (UNIX only)	0	The maximum time in minutes that the dispatcher will wait for the completion of the report execution before restarting the request. Impromptu Web Reports will attempt to run the report three times before canceling the request. The default value, 0, means no timeout limit.

## Logging Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Server.Logging

Property	Default value	Description
Transaction Tracing Level	0	The type of Object Store transaction tracing messages to be logged.  This level is used by all Impromptu Web Report server components.
Dispatcher Tracing Level	0	The type of dispatcher tracing messages to be logged.
Cleanup Tracing Level	0	This type of cleanup tracing adds a cleanup log to the standard logging directory.  Set the value to 1 to create a cleanup log. The default value of 0 means no cleanup log is created.

## Register Services

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Server.Register Services

**Note:** Configuration is not required for Register Services. However, you must apply the IBM® Cognos® Impromptu Web Reports settings in Windows® (p. 27) or in UNIX® (p. 47) to update your environment with the Register Services settings.

## Request Manager Tuning

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Server.Request Manager Tuning

Property	Default value	Description
Keep Alive After Request Manager Requests (Seconds)	240	The maximum number of seconds that a request manager will wait before shutting down after the request retirement begins.
Maximum Request Manager Read Timeout (Milliseconds)	30000	The maximum number of milliseconds that the dispatcher will wait for the request manager to load and process a request.
Maximum Client Wait Timeout (Milliseconds)	30000	The maximum number of milliseconds that a client will wait for a response from the dispatcher.
Retirement Time (Seconds)	3300	The maximum number of seconds that a request manager will wait for outstanding requests after retirement.  This time should be less than the recycle time.
Recycle Time (Seconds)	3600	The number of seconds that a request manager will run before being retired.  A value of Ø disables recycling.
Maximum Active PowerPrompts	24	The maximum number of actively running PowerPrompts threads.

---

# Chapter 9: IBM Cognos Visualizer Settings

---

IBM® Cognos® Visualizer provides report authors with a variety of options for creating, presenting, and distributing visual representations of complex data for easy analysis. Report authors can consolidate company information from many data sources in a single visualization to provide a comprehensive vision of the enterprise.

## Important and Common Changes

This is a Windows® application which you should not have to configure. However, you must apply [\(p. 27\)](#) the IBM® Cognos® Visualizer settings to update your environment with any changes.

## General Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Visualizer.General

**Note:** This component is not available on UNIX.

Property	Default value	Description
Install location	<i>installation_location\bin</i>	The location where IBM® Cognos® Visualizer is installed.



---

# Chapter 10: IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server Settings

---

IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Visualizations is a Web application that distributes visualizations created by authors using the authoring version of IBM® Cognos® Visualizer. Report consumers can view these visualizations using a Web browser.

For information about server configuration, see ["IBM Cognos Server Group Settings" \(p. 309\)](#).

## Important and Common Changes

You must apply the IBM® Cognos® Visualizer Web Server settings in Windows® ([p. 27](#)) or in UNIX® ([p. 47](#)) to update your environment with any changes.

## Default Ports for IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server Components

### Default Ports in Windows

IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Visualization uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default port
Sun Java™ System Directory Server	389
Access Manager Server ticket service	9010
Access Manager Server authentication service	8070
Web server	80
IBM® Cognos® Communication service	9041
IBM® Cognos® Visualizer dispatcher	8060
Upfront search engine	4455
Notification server	5020
Upfront dispatcher	8030
Upfront server administration	8031

Component	Default port
Upfront remote tracing	8032
Upfront data store	8150
Upfront File Manager	8030

### Default Ports in UNIX

IBM Cognos Series 7 Visualization uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default port
Sun Java™ System Directory Server	1389
Access Manager Server ticket service	9010
Access Manager Server authentication service	8070
Web server	80
IBM Cognos Communication service	9041
IBM Cognos Visualizer dispatcher	8060
Upfront search engine	4455
Notification server	5020
Upfront dispatcher	8030
Upfront server administration	8031
Upfront remote tracing	8032
Upfront data store	8150
Upfront File Manager	8030

## Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation

The following table contains some of the more common components that you may want to install on separate computers. Associated with each component is the place in the object hierarchy where you should modify the location of each category if required.

Component	Object hierarchy location
Directory server	<p>Services.Access Manager - Directory Server. General.Computer</p> <p>Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication</p> <p>Source.Directory Server.Computer</p>
Access Manager Server	<p>Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.Primary Ticket Service</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary tickets services.</p> <p>Services.Access Manager - Web Authentication.Authentication</p> <p>Services.Primary Authentication Service.Host</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary authentication services.</p>
Upfront gateway	<p><b>Command Line Interface</b></p> <p>IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.upfront.Upfront Server Group.gateway</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code></p> <p><b>Graphical User Interface</b></p> <p>Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Upfront Server Group.Gateway URL</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code></p>
IBM® Cognos® Visualizer Server gateway	<p><b>Command Line Interface</b></p> <p>IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos Visualizer.Visualizer Server Group.gateway</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/vizcgi.exe</code></p> <p><b>Graphical User Interface</b></p> <p>Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Visualizer Server Group.Gateway URL</p> <p>By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/vizcgi.exe</code></p>

Component	Object hierarchy location
Access Manager gateway	<b>Command Line Interface</b>
	IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.accman.AccManAdmin.gateway
	By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/accessadmin.cgi</code>
	IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.accman.AccManLogon.gateway
	By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/login.cgi</code>
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
	Not applicable

## Dispatcher

You can configure the following categories for the IBM® Cognos® Visualizer Web Server dispatcher.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server.Dispatcher.General

Property	Default value	Description
Server Group for IBM Cognos Visualizer Web	Visualizer Server Group	A server group containing the set of IBM Cognos Visualizer dispatchers associated with this gateway.
Server Group for Upfront	Upfront Server Group	A server group containing Upfront Dispatchers.  This group is used when saving or publishing visualizations to Upfront.
Visualizer Web Server Name	The name of your computer	The server name for IBM Cognos Visualizer.  Server group definitions are maintained under IBM® Cognos® Shared.

Property	Default value	Description
Visualizer Web Server Port Number	8060	<p>The port number used by the IBM Cognos Visualizer computer.</p> <p>This number corresponds with the server group definitions specified using the <b>Server Configuration</b> tab.</p>
Temporary file location for the IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server	<i>installation_location</i> \viz\ temp	Location to store the generated temporary files during processing of Print Preview request.
Lifespan of temporary files generated by the IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server	900	Specifies the number of seconds a temporary file that is generated during processing of Print Preview request is kept before being purged.
Image Cache Size	100	Specifies the maximum number of images to cache in the server's image cache.
Image Cache Lifespan	60	Specifies the number of minutes an image can reside in the server's image cache before it becomes obsolete.
Log Image Cache Statistics	False	Indicates whether or not to log image cache statistics to a log file.

## Logging Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server.Gateway.Logging

Property	Default value	Description
Maximum Size of Log Files (bytes)	256000	The maximum size of the files vizwebaudit.log, vizweberror.log, and vizweb.log (on UNIX® only). When the maximum size is reached, the log file is renamed and a new log file is created.
Location of Log Files	C:\Program Files\Cognos\cer6\logs	The location where log files are written.

## Gateway

Following are the categories you can configure for IBM® Cognos® Visualizer Web Server gateway.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server.Gateway.General

Property	Default value	Description
Server Group for IBM Cognos Visualizer Gateway	Visualizer Server Group	A server group containing the set of IBM Cognos Visualizer dispatchers associated with this gateway.
Server URL	none	By default, IBM Cognos Visualizer Web references resources at a path relative to the parent HTML document. When HTML pages must access resources in a remote Domain Name Space location, specify a URL prefix, for example, http://RemoteServerName

Property	Default value	Description
Restrict the Outgoing Web Port	False	Specifies whether all communication between the dispatcher and the gateway is through the same port. Selecting the True option may result in slower response time.  If your Web server is outside a firewall, you may have port restrictions.
CGI Timeout	900	Specifies the amount of time in seconds the gateway will wait for a connection to the Visualizer Web Server.

## Tuning Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server.Gateway.Tuning

Property	Default value	Description
Gateway Timeout	900	Specifies the maximum amount of time in seconds that the gateway will spend processing a request.
Connect Retry	10	Specifies the maximum number of times the gateway will attempt to connect to a dispatcher.
Connect Timeout	0	Specifies whether all communication between the dispatcher and the gateway is through the same port. Selecting the True option may result in slower response time.  If your Web server is outside a firewall, you may have port restrictions.

Property	Default value	Description
CGI Timeout	0	<p>Sets the maximum amount of time in milliseconds the gateway will spend attempting to connect with a dispatcher.</p> <p>When this value is set to 0, the operating system default is used.</p>

---

# Chapter 11: IBM Cognos NoticeCast Settings

---

IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Alerts/Notification lets users detect time-critical events in their business applications using IBM® Cognos® NoticeCast client and server. Users create NoticeCast agents, the rule-driven objects that represent your business model, that listen for, or respond to, events and then send out email notices to interested parties.

## Mandatory Changes

There is no default automatic configuration for the data store and mail server used by IBM® Cognos® NoticeCast. You must choose a database where the NoticeCast data store will be located, create the data store, and then change other settings accordingly. Also, you must provide information about the mail server that processes notification messages. To configure IBM Cognos NoticeCast:

- ☐ select a data store connection file and administration action  
Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store.General.Data Store Connection File.
- ☐ provide information about the data store
  - Object hierarchy for a data store located in an IBM DB2 database: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store.DB2 Data Store Configuration ([p. 172](#))
  - Object hierarchy for a data store located in an Informix database: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store.Informix Data Store Configuration ([p. 175](#))
  - Object hierarchy for a data store located in a Microsoft® SQL Server database: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store.Microsoft SQL Server Data Store Configuration ([p. 176](#))
  - Object hierarchy for a data store located in an Oracle database: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store.Oracle Data Store Configuration ([p. 177](#))
- ☐ apply the IBM Cognos NoticeCast settings

For information about server configuration, see "[NoticeCast Server](#)" ([p. 182](#)).

## Default Ports for NoticeCast Components

### Default Ports in Windows

IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Alerts/Notifications uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default port
Sun Java™ System Directory Server	389

Component	Default port
Access Manager Server ticket service	9010
Access Manager Server authentication service	8070
Web server	80
NoticeCast dispatcher	10998 (RMI), 5020 (Cogx2)
NoticeCast server	10999
RMI Firewall	10997
Upfront search engine	4455
Notification server	5020
Upfront dispatcher	8030
Upfront server administration	8031
Upfront remote tracing	8032
Upfront data store	8150
Upfront File Manager	8030

### Default Ports in UNIX

IBM Cognos Series 7 Alerts/Notifications uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default Port
Sun Java™ System Directory Server	1389
Access Manager Server ticket service	9010
Access Manager Server authentication service	8070
Web server	80
NoticeCast dispatcher	10998 (RMI), 5020 (Cogx2)

Component	Default Port
NoticeCast server	10999
RMI Firewall	10997
Upfront search engine	4455
Notification server	5020
Upfront dispatcher	8030
Upfront server administration	8031
Upfront remote tracing	8032
Upfront data store	8150
Upfront File Manager	8030

## Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation

The following table contains some of the more common components that you may want to install on separate computers. Associated with each component is the place in the object hierarchy where you should modify the location of each category, if required.

Component	Object hierarchy location
Directory server	Services.Access Manager - Directory Server. General.Computer Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server.Computer
Access Manager Server	Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.Primary Ticket Service <b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary tickets services. Services.Access Manager - Web Authentication.Authentication Services.Primary Authentication Service.Host <b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary authentication services.

Component	Object hierarchy location
Upfront gateway	<b>Command Line Interface</b>
	IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration. upfront.Upfront Server Group.gateway
	By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
	Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Upfront Server Group.Gateway URL
	By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>

## NoticeCast Data Store

You can configure the following categories for NoticeCast Data Store.

### Connection File

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store.Connection File

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Connection File	ms_connection.conf	<p>The name of the file containing the data store connection settings, one of Oracle (ora_connection.conf), MS SQL Server (ms_connection.conf), DB2 (DB2_connection.conf), or Informix (ifx_connection.conf).</p> <p>This value decides which other category you need to configure under IBM® Cognos® NoticeCast. NoticeCast Data Store.</p>

### DB2 Data Store Configuration

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store.DB2 Data Store Configuration

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Database	DB2	Data store type.

Property	Default value	Description
DB2 Data Store Connection File	db2_connection.conf	The file containing the connection settings for a DB2 Data Store.
DB2 JDBC Driver File	<i>installation_location</i> /bin/db2java.zip	The path and name of the DB2 JDBC driver file. The name of the recommended driver is db2java.zip file. This can usually be found in the jdbc12 directory of the DB2 installation.
JDBC Driver Name	COM.ibm.db2.jdbc.net.DB2Driver	The name of the JDBC driver, as specified by the publisher of the driver.
Database URL	jdbc:DB2://DB2ServerName:6789/dbName	The JDBC connection string, where DB2ServerName is the name of the DB2 database computer, port is the port number of the JDBC server on the database computer, and dbName is name of the NoticeCast database.
Data Store Logon ID	NCuserID	The user name for the NoticeCast DB2 Data Store
Data Store Logon Password	*****	The password for the NoticeCast DB2 data store user.
Use Read-Only Connections	true	Specifies whether to use read-only connections.
Keep Connections Open	true	Specifies whether to keep connections to the data store database open.

## General

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store.General

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Administration Action	version	<p>The action to perform on the data store.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Version (checks the current data store version)</li> <li>• Install (creates a new data store)</li> <li>• Update (updates an existing data store)</li> </ul>
Check Connection Interval	12	The number of minutes to wait before checking the database connection.
Initial Connection Count	5	The number of connections to open initially.
Maximum Connections	10	The maximum number of connections to open.
Maximum Wait Time	20	The number of seconds, to wait for a connection where 0=indefinite.
Check for Dead Threads	true	Specifies whether to check if any dead threads have locked connections.
Check for Dead Connections	false	Specifies whether to check if any connections are locked.
Use Thread Locking per Connection	false	Specifies whether to lock a connection to a thread.
Maximum Connections (Read-Only)	10	The maximum number of connections to open.
Maximum Wait Time (Read-Only)	20	The number of seconds to wait for a connection where 0=indefinite.

Property	Default value	Description
Check for Dead Threads (Read-Only)	false	Specifies whether to check if any dead threads have locked connections.
Check for Dead Connections (Read-Only)	false	Specifies whether to check if any read-only connections are locked.
Use Thread Locking per Connection (Read-Only)	false	Specifies whether to lock a connection to a thread.
Use Round Robin	true	Specifies whether to use round robin for connections.
Data Store Administration Log File Name	datastore_admin.log	The name of the data store administration log file.
Data Store Administration Logging Detail	info	The level of detail to log, fatal (least detail), critical, warning, info, and debug (most detail).

## Informix Data Store Configuration

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store.Informix Data Store Configuration

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Database	Informix	Data store type.
Informix Data Store Connection File	ifx_connection.conf	The file containing the connection settings for an Informix Data Store.
Informix JDBC Driver File	<i>installation_location</i> /bin/ifxjdbc.jar	The path and name of the Informix JDBC driver file. This driver is usually included in the Informix installation.
JDBC Driver Name	com.informix.jdbc.IfxDriver	The name of the JDBC driver, as specified by the publisher of the driver.

Property	Default value	Description
Database URL	jdbc:informix-sqli:// ServerName:port/dbName: informixserver=InformixServerName	The JDBC connection string, where ServerName is the name of the Informix database computer, port is the port number for the Informix database, dbName is the name of the NoticeCast database and InformixServerName is the name of the Informix Server instance
Data Store Logon ID	NCuserID	The user name for the NoticeCast Informix Data Store
Data Store Logon Password	*****	The password for the NoticeCast Informix data store user.
Use Read-Only Connections	true	Specifies whether to use read-only connections.
Keep Connections Open	true	Specifies whether to keep connections to the data store database open.

## Microsoft SQL Server Data Store Configuration

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store.Microsoft® SQL Server Data Store Configuration

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Database	Microsoft SQL Server	Data store type.
SQL Server Data Store Connection File	ms_connection.conf	The file containing the connection settings for a SQL Server data store.
MS SQL JDBC Driver File	<i>installation_location</i> /bin/ JSQLConnect.jar	The path and name of the MS SQL Server JDBC driver file. The installed file, JSQLConnect.jar, is the recommended driver.

Property	Default value	Description
JDBC Driver Name	com.jnetdirect.jsql.JSQLDriver	The name of the JDBC driver, as specified by the publisher of the driver.
Database URL	jdbc:JSQLConnect:// dbServerName/ NCDataStoreName	The JDBC connection string, where dbServerName is the name of the MS SQL Server database computer, and NCDataStoreName is the name of the NoticeCast data store.
Data Store Logon ID	NCUserID	The user name for the Notice-Cast data store in MS SQL Server.
Data Store Logon Password	*****	The password for the Notice-Cast data store in MS SQL Server.
Fetch Size	1000000	Controls the number of result set rows to return.
Use Read-Only Connections	true	Specifies whether to use read-only connections.
Keep Connections Open	true	Specifies whether to keep connections to the data store database open.

## Oracle Data Store Configuration

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Data Store.Oracle Data Store Configuration

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Database	Oracle	Data store type.
Oracle Data Store Connection File	ora_connection.conf	The file containing the connection settings for an Oracle data store.

Property	Default value	Description
Oracle JDBC Driver File	<i>installation_location/bin/classes12.zip</i>	The path and name of the Oracle JDBC driver file. The recommended driver is classes12.zip. This driver may be included with your Oracle installation. Alternatively, you can download it from the Oracle website. You can reference a driver on a different computer.
JDBC Driver Name	oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver	The name of the JDBC driver, as specified by the publisher of the driver. The name of the recommended driver is 'oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver.
Database URL	jdbc:oracle:thin:@OracleServer:1521:ORCL	The JDBC connection string with the name of the Oracle database computer (default OracleServer), port number (default 1521), and database instance (default ORCL).
Data Store Logon ID	NCuserID	The user name for the NoticeCast Oracle data store.
Data Store Logon Password	*****	The password for the NoticeCast Oracle data store user.
Fetch Size	10	The number of result set rows to return.
Use Read-Only Connections	false	Specifies whether to use read-only connections.
Keep Connections Open	true	Specifies whether to keep connections to the data store database open.

## NoticeCast Server

You can configure the following categories for NoticeCast Server.

## Logging Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Server.Logging

Property	Default value	Description
Server Log File Name	ncserver.log	The name of the NoticeCast Server Log File.
Server Logging Detail	critical	Specifies the levels of detail to log: fatal (least detail), critical, warning, info, or debug (most detail).
Maximum Server Log File Size	512000	The maximum size in bytes of a Server log file. If this size is reached, a new file is created and a backup of the previous file is saved.
Cogx Java™ Encodings	true	Specifies whether to allow Java encoding names.
Verbose Messages	true	Specifies whether to log verbose messages.
Cogx Log File Name	cogx.log	The name of the CogX log file.
Cogx Logging Detail	critical	Specifies the level of detail to log: fatal (least detail), critical, warning, info, or debug (most detail).
Maximum Cogx Log File Size	512000	The maximum size in bytes of a CogX log file. If this size is reached, a new file is created and a backup of the previous file is saved.

## Mail Server

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Server.Mail Server

Property	Default value	Description
SMTP Server Name	smtp.MyCompany.com	The name of your SMTP (outgoing) mail server. Usually of the form mail.yourcompany-name.com, it can be just a computer name. Contact your mail administrator for the correct value.
SMTP Server Port	-1	The port to connect to your SMTP (outgoing) mail server. Set to -1 to use default port.
SMTP Login Name	none	<p>The user ID to log onto the mail server. Most systems do not require a user ID to send messages.</p> <p>You must leave this property blank unless authentication is turned on in the mail server. Otherwise, mail will not be sent.</p>
SMTP Login Password	*****	The password for the mail server user.
SMTP Mail Content Encoding	UTF-8	The content encoding used in the outgoing emails.
SMTP Mail Batching	false	Specifies whether report deliveries from Impromptu® Web Reports should be batched by user class.
Email Address of Sender	NoticeCast@MyCompany.com	<p>The name that appears as the Sender on outgoing messages. We recommended that you set this to the POP3 Login Name.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> We recommend that your mail server administrator set up an email account that is used only for notifications.</p>

Property	Default value	Description
SMTP Email Address Block Separator	;	The character used to separate the TO:, CC: and BCC: address blocks in an email address line.
SMTP Email Address Separator	,	The character used to separate addresses within a TO:, CC:, and BCC: address block.
POP3 Server Name	pop3.MyCompany.com	The name of your POP3 (incoming) mail server.
POP3 Server Port	-1	The port to connect to your POP3 (incoming) mail server. Set to -1 to use the default port.
POP3 Login Name	pop3LoginID	The user ID to use to check for incoming (unsubscribe) messages.  We recommend that you set this to use the same value as the account specified in Email Address of Sender.
POP3 Login Password	*****	The password for the POP3 user.
Polling Interval - Mail Server Up	120	The number of seconds to wait before checking that the mail server is still available.
Polling Interval - Mail Server Down	120	The number of seconds to wait before checking if the mail server has become available again.

Property	Default value	Description
Delete all POP3 Messages	false	Specifies whether to delete messages in the unsubscribe messages mailbox after they are read.  <b>Note:</b> If you specify True, all messages will be deleted from the inbox after they are read by the unsubscribe service. If False, messages are left in the inbox and should be cleared periodically by the NoticeCast administrator.
Activate the Unsubscribe Service	false	Specifies whether to activate the email unsubscribe service.

## NoticeCast Server

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Server.NoticeCast Server

Property	Default value	Description
NoticeCast Server Computer	The name of your computer.	The name of the computer running the NoticeCast data store server.
NoticeCast Server Port	10999	The port to connect to the NoticeCast data store server.

Property	Default value	Description
RMI Firewall Port	10997	<p>The fixed port specified by the NoticeCast Server when responding to session requests through a firewall. This port must be open in the firewall. A fixed port is used only if problems occur when the NoticeCast Server is located behind a firewall that is using Network Address Translation (NAT).</p> <p>The NoticeCast Server also includes its name or public IP address in the response to session requests. This value is set using the <code>-Djava.rmi.server.hostname</code> value in NoticeCast Shared.NoticeCast Environment.Advanced Runtime Options.</p> <p>If the NoticeCast Administration console is running outside the firewall, you must open the database port to enable a connection.</p>

Property	Default value	Description
Maximum Running Agents	7	<p>Defines the maximum number of agents to run concurrently. A value of zero indicates no maximum.</p> <p>To avoid data store connection timeout errors the value of this parameter should be lower than the value of the Maximum Connections (ReadOnly) property. The values of the Use Thread Locking per Connection (ReadOnly) property should be set to True while the Use Round Robin property should be set to False. (See the General section under NoticeCast Data Store for information on all these data store properties.)</p>
NoticeCast Dispatcher	The name of your computer.	The name of the computer running the Dispatcher service.
NoticeCast Dispatcher Port	10998	The port to connect to the Dispatcher service.
Activate Audit Service	false	Specifies whether to store a history of changes to a message.
Temporary Directory	../noticecast	The temporary location for the NoticeCast repository server.

## NoticeCast Shared

You can configure the following categories for NoticeCast Shared.

### NoticeCast Environment

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Shared.NoticeCast Environment

Property	Default value	Description
Java™ Version	1.6	The major version of the Java Runtime Environment.

Property	Default value	Description
Java Runtime Command	jre\6.0sr6\bin\java.exe	<p>The Java Runtime Environment used by IBM® Cognos® NoticeCast.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> For the location of the JRE used by other IBM® Cognos® products, see IBM Cognos Shared.Location.JRE Path</p>
Advanced Runtime Options	none	<p>You may add options. For example, Max memory allocation -Xmx=128m means 128MB RAM. For more information run &gt;java -X</p> <p>If communication problems occur when the NoticeCast Server is located behind a firewall that is using Network Address Translation (NAT), specify the following:</p> <p>-Djava.rmi.server.<i>hostname</i></p> <p>where <i>hostname</i> is the NoticeCast Server's name or public IP address.</p> <p>The NoticeCast Server also includes a fixed port in the response to session requests. This value is set using the RMI Firewall Port property in IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Server.NoticeCast Server.</p>



---

# Chapter 12: IBM Cognos PowerPlay Settings

---

IBM® Cognos® Series 7 PowerPlay® provides users data access to cubes and reports in a local environment using the Windows® client applications PowerPlay for Windows or PowerPlay for Excel. IBM Cognos Series 7 PowerPlay also includes Transformer, which builds the cubes seen in PowerPlay.

## Important and Common Changes

This is a Windows® application which you should not have to configure. However, you must apply (p. 27) the IBM® Cognos® PowerPlay® settings to update your environment with any changes.

## General Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos PowerPlay.General

**Note:** This component is not available on UNIX.

Property	Default value	Description
Update PowerPlay Registry Settings at Runtime	False	Specifies whether to have PowerPlay automatically register its OLE classes on program startup.
Install Location	<i>installation_location</i> \bin	The location where PowerPlay is installed.
Windows Directory	\WINNT or \WINDOWS	The location where Windows is installed on the computer being configured.
Windows System Directory	\WINNT\system32 or \WINDOWS\system32	The location where the Windows system directory is installed on the computer being configured.
Read Cache Size	0	<p>A parameter that maps to the size of the cache file.</p> <p>Increase the value to improve the performance of PowerPlay data requests.</p>

Property	Default value	Description
Locale Mode	Standalone	Specifies the locale mode. If you set the parameter to Suite, the locale settings will be retrieved from the cerlocale.xml file. If you set the parameter to Standalone, the locale settings will be retrieved from the operating system regional settings
Maximum Axis Size (Advanced property view only)	2000000	<p>Specifies the maximum number of elements such as rows, columns, and layers, on an axis. If the number of elements on the axis exceeds this maximum value, checks of memory size fail and are cancelled. A message appears informing you that the check has exceeded your available memory.</p> <p>If the Maximum Axis Size value is set to zero, no check is performed and PowerPlay client continues processing. Errors may be encountered if insufficient memory is available.</p>
Export To	Excel 2002 and Higher	Specifies the versions of Microsoft® Excel that can have report layers exported to separate worksheets. The default is support for Excel 2002 or higher. Customers requiring support for older versions of Excel can revert to previous behavior using the Configuration Manager.

Property	Default value	Description
Excel Export for Layered Report	Worksheet per Layer	Specifies whether multi-layered PowerPlay reports are exported as one Excel worksheet per layer or as a single Excel worksheet. By default, multi-layered PowerPlay reports are exported as one Excel worksheet per layer when exporting to Excel 2002 or higher.



---

# Chapter 13: IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server Settings

---

IBM® Cognos® Series 7 OLAP provides users data access to cubes and reports in a local, wide-area, or Web-based network. PowerPlay® Enterprise Server can handle simultaneous requests from any client type. Users can use their Web browser to open reports or cubes in Upfront or PowerPlay Enterprise Server. They can also use PowerPlay for Windows® or PowerPlay for Excel to open any reports or cubes on the server.

## Important and Common Changes

You must apply the IBM® Cognos® PowerPlay® Enterprise Server settings to update your environment with any changes.

You may need to change the following PowerPlay Enterprise Server properties:

- IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.General. PowerPlay Server is Mirror
- IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.General. PowerPlay Server Port Number
- IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.General. Resource (/ppwb) Location
- IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.General. Temporary Files Location (ppsvertemp)

## Default Ports for PowerPlay Enterprise Server

### Default Ports in Windows

IBM® Cognos® Series 7 OLAP uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default port
Sun Java™ System Directory Server	389
Access Manager Server ticket service	9010
Access Manager Server authentication service	8070
Web server	80
PowerPlay® Enterprise Server	8010
Upfront search engine	4455

Component	Default port
Notification server	5020
Upfront dispatcher	8030
Upfront server administration	8031
Upfront remote tracing	8032
Upfront data store	8150
Upfront File Manager	8030

### Default Ports in UNIX

IBM Cognos Series 7 OLAP uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default Port
Sun Java™ System Directory Server	1389
Access Manager Server ticket service	9010
Access Manager Server authentication service	8070
Web server	80
PowerPlay Enterprise Server	8010
Upfront search engine	4455
Upfront event server	5000
Upfront dispatcher	8030
Upfront server administration	8031
Upfront remote tracing	8032
Upfront data store	8150
Upfront File Manager	8030

## Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation

The following table contains some of the more common components that you may want to install on separate computers. Associated with each component is the place in the object hierarchy where you should modify the location of each category if required.

Component	Object hierarchy location
Directory server	Services.Access Manager - Directory Server. General.Computer Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server.Computer
Access Manager Server	Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.Primary Ticket Service  <b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary tickets services. Services.Access Manager - Web Authentication.Authentication Services.Primary Authentication Service.Host  <b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary authentication services.
Upfront gateway	<b>Command Line Interface</b>  IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.upfront.Upfront Server Group.gateway  By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>  <b>Graphical User Interface</b>  Server Configuration.All Server Groups.Upfront Server Group.Gateway URL  By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>
PowerPlay® Enterprise Server gateway	<b>Command Line Interface</b>  IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.ppes.PPES Server Group.gateway  By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe</code>  <b>Graphical User Interface</b>  Server Configuration.All Server Groups.PPES Server Group.Gateway URL  By default, the gateway is <code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe</code>

## Dispatcher

You can configure the following categories for Dispatcher.

### Accessibility Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos PowerPlay® Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.Accessibility

Property	Default value	Description
Accessible PDF	False	Select True to generate PDF-format reports that can be read by a screen reader.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Dispatcher.General

Property	Default value	Description
PowerPlay Server is Mirror	False	Specifies whether a server is a server-level mirror and not part of any server group.  It is common to change this to True. For more information, see the <i>PowerPlay Enterprise Server Guide</i> .
PowerPlay Server Group	PPES Server Group	The name of the server group.
PowerPlay Server Name	The name of your computer	The server name for PowerPlay.  Unless mirror is set to True, this server should appear in the server group listed above. Server group definitions are maintained under IBM® Cognos® Shared.

Property	Default value	Description
PowerPlay Server Port Number	8010	<p>The port number used by the PowerPlay server.</p> <p>Usually, this number must correspond with the server group definitions specified using the <b>Server Configuration</b> tab.</p> <p>If the server is only a server-level mirror, specify a valid port number. You may have to change the value if you are running a previous version of PowerPlay or if the default port is already in use.</p>
Upfront Server Group	Upfront Server Group	<p>A server group containing Upfront Dispatchers.</p> <p>This group is used when saving or publishing PowerPlay reports to Upfront.</p>
Resource (/ppwb) Location	<i>installation_location</i> \webcontent\ppwb	<p>The location of temporary files. On Windows®, a directory name temp must exist in this location. On UNIX®, a directory named Temp must exist in this location.</p> <p>This value must correspond to the PowerPlay gateway setting for the associated gateway.</p>
Temporary Files Location (ppsvertemp)	<i>installation_location</i> \ppsvertemp	<p>The directory where the report processors and dispatcher create temporary files as needed.</p> <p>For security purposes, this directory does not have a Web alias.</p>
Fetch Temporary Files to the server	False	<p>Specifies whether temporary files usually located with the gateway are located with the server, potentially behind the security firewall.</p>

Property	Default value	Description
Auto-restart ppserver (UNIX only)	True	Specifies whether ppserver restarts after UNIX server is restarted.

## Gateway

Following are the categories you can configure for PowerPlay® Gateway.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Gateway.General

Property	Default value	Description
PowerPlay Server Group	PPES Server Group	A server group containing the set of PowerPlay dispatchers associated with this gateway.  Alternatively, you can specify dispatcher computers and ports.
Restrict the Outgoing Web Port	False	Specifies whether all communication between the query processor and the gateway is through the same port, which may result in slower response time.  If your Web server is outside a firewall, you may have port restrictions.
Temporary Resource (/ppwb) Location	<i>installation_location</i> \webcontent\ppwb	The location of temporary files. This value should correspond to the PowerPlay gateway setting.
Temporary File Access	shared	Specifies the temporary file access method.

Property	Default value	Description
Remote HREF prefix for (/ppwb) Location	none	The URL prefix if HTML resources are on another computer.  By default, resources referenced are relative to the parent HTML document.

## Temporary File Cleanup Service Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Gateway.Temporary File Cleanup Service

Property	Default value	Description
Enable Cleanup Service	False	Specifies whether to clean up the temporary .html files that reside on the Gateway server.  This service is available only if a 'Gateway Only' (no Dispatcher) install is selected.

## PESCleanupScript Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Gateway.Temporary File Cleanup Service.PESCleanupScript

Property	Default value	Description
Temporary File Check Interval (sec)	120	The number of seconds to wait before the cleanup service is run.
Minimum File Age Deleted (min)	15	The number of minutes to wait before deleting the temp files on the server.

## Tuning

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.Gateway.Tuning

Property	Default value	Description
CGI Timeout	900	The maximum number of seconds the gateway will spend processing a request
Connect Retry	10	The maximum number of times the gateway will attempt to connect with a dispatcher
Connect Timeout	0	<p>The maximum number of milliseconds the gateway will spend attempting to connect with a dispatcher</p> <p><b>Note:</b>A value of 0 implies that a connect timeout is not specified and the operating system default will be used</p>

---

# Chapter 14: IBM Cognos PowerPlay Transformer Settings

---

IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Transformer provides PowerPlay® administrators with the multidimensional modeling, transformation, extraction, analyzing, and reporting tools for the PowerPlay family of products.

## Important and Common Changes

You must apply the IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Transformer settings to update your environment with any changes.

- Services.PowerPlay® Data Services.Cache.Write Cache Size
- Services.UDA.General.Memory Size of Sort Buffer
- Services.UDA.General.List of Temporary Directories

## Default Ports for PowerPlay Transformer Components

### Default Ports in Windows

IBM® Cognos® Series 7 PowerPlay® Transformer uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default port
Sun Java™ System Directory Server	389

### Default Ports in UNIX

IBM Cognos Series 7 PowerPlay Transformer uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default Port
Sun Java™ System Directory Server	1389
PowerGrid	1526

## Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation

The following table contains some of the more common components that you may want to install on separate computers. Associated with each component is the place in the object hierarchy where you should modify the location if required.

Component	Object hierarchy location
Directory server	Services.Access Manager - Directory Server. General.Computer Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server.Computer
Access Manager Server	Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.Primary Ticket Service  <b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary tickets services. Services.Access Manager - Web Authentication.Authentication Services.Primary Authentication Service.Host  <b>Note:</b> You can specify optional secondary authentication services.

## General Properties (UNIX only)

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos PowerPlay® Transformer.General

**Note:** No configuration is required for this component.

## Locale Access Options

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos PowerPlay® Transformer.Locale Access Options

Property	Default value	Description
Locale Mode	Standalone	Specifies the locale mode. If you set the parameter to Suite, the locale settings will be retrieved from the cerlocale.xml file. If you set the parameter to Standalone, the locale settings will be retrieved from the operating system regional settings.

## MDL Save Options Properties (Windows only)

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos PowerPlay® Transformer.MDL Save Options

Property	Default value	Description
VerbOutput	0	Specifies whether the .mdl save actions are in verb format or structured MDL format
ObjectIDOutput	1	Specifies whether .mdl save actions use object identifiers

## PowerGrid Configuration Properties (Windows only)

Object hierarchy: (IBM Cognos PowerPlay® Transformer.PowerGrid Configuration

Property	Default value	Description
Network Script	rsserver.sh	The UNIX® shell script used by the PowerGrid daemon to launch Transformer
NETD Port	1526	The port used for communication between the PowerGrid client and server components



---

## Chapter 15: OLAP Data Access

---

IBM® Cognos® software supports connections to several third-party OLAP data sources. To use third-party OLAP data sources, you must enable a connection, and if required, customize the connection settings. For example, you can customize format and sort properties for measures.

For more information, see the *OLAP Server Connection Guide*.

### Important and Common Changes

You must apply the OLAP data access settings to update your environment with any changes.

### IBM Cognos Finance Driver Properties

Object hierarchy: OLAP Data Access.IBM Cognos Finance driver

**Note:** IBM® Cognos® Finance may appear as IBM® Cognos® Consolidation, depending on the version of Configuration Manager installed

Property	Default value	Description
Enable IBM Cognos Finance	False	Specifies whether to enable IBM Cognos Finance, where true=enable and false=disable
Driver Location	none	Specifies the rendition installation location where the current IBM Cognos Finance PowerPlay® Data Services (PPDS) driver files can be found. If the rendition changes because of a new PowerPlay or IBM Cognos Finance product installation, the driver location must be updated to ensure PowerPlay can find the latest IBM Cognos Finance PPDS drivers in the correct rendition installation.

### IBM Cognos Planning - Analyst Driver Properties

Object hierarchy: OLAP Data Access.IBM Cognos Planning - Analyst driver

Property	Default value	Description
Enable IBM Cognos Planning - Analyst	False	Specifies whether to enable IBM® Cognos® Enterprise Planning - Analyst, where true=enable and false=disable
Driver Location	none	Specifies the rendition installation location where the current EP PowerPlay® Data Services (PPDS) driver files can be found. If the rendition changes because of a new PowerPlay or EP product installation, the driver location must be updated to ensure PowerPlay can find the latest EP PPDS drivers in the correct rendition install location.

## IBM Cognos Planning - Contributor Driver Properties

Object hierarchy: OLAP Data Access.IBM Cognos Planning - Contributor driver

Property	Default value	Description
Enable IBM Cognos Planning - Contributor	False	Specifies whether to enable IBM® Cognos® Enterprise Planning - Contributor, where true=enable and false=disable
Driver Location	none	Specifies the rendition installation location where the current EP PowerPlay® Data Services (PPDS) driver files can be found. If the rendition changes because of a new PowerPlay or EP product installation, the driver location must be updated to ensure PowerPlay can find the latest EP PPDS drivers in the correct rendition install location.

## DB2 OLAP Driver Properties

Object hierarchy: OLAP Data Access.DB2 OLAP driver

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos Missing	1	Specifies the format of missing values, where 0 = 0, and 1 = NA
Cell Drill Through Indicator	0	Specifies whether to disable the driver drill through mechanism, where 0=disable and 1=enable
DISABLE_ZEROCHECK	0	Specifies whether to disable zero suppression, where 0=disable and 1=enable

## Hyperion Essbase Driver Properties

Object hierarchy: OLAP Data Access.Hyperion Essbase driver

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos Missing	1	Specifies the format of missing values, where 0 = 0, and 1 = NA
Cell Drill Through Indicator	0	Specifies whether to disable the driver drill through mechanism, where 0=disable and 1=enable
DISABLE_ZEROCHECK	0	Specifies whether to disable zero suppression, where 0=disable and 1=enable

## Microsoft OLE DB for OLAP Driver

Object hierarchy: OLAP Data Access.Microsoft OLE DB for OLAP driver

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos Missing	0	Specifies the format of missing values, where 0 = 0, and 1 = NA

Property	Default value	Description
Measure Format	1	Specifies whether to support the measure format set in the remote database
Disable Max Zero Suppress	0	Specifies whether to disable the driver-level zero suppression of zeroes coming from the database
Suppress Inaccessible As Missing	0	Specifies whether to treat the secure cells as missing during a zero suppression operation
Disable Zero Check	0	Specifies whether to disable zero suppression, where 0=disable and 1=enable

## OLAP Server Properties

Object hierarchy: OLAP Data Access.OLAP Server

Property	Default value	Description
Microsoft® OLAP Service (Windows® only)	1	OLE DB for OLAP Adapter for Microsoft SQL Server Analysis Services
SAP BW ODBO (Windows only)	0	OLE DB for OLAP Adapter for SAP BW Server
Hyperion Essbase	0	Adapter for Hyperion Essbase server
IBM DB2 OLAP	0	Adapter for IBM DB2 OLAP server

## SAP BW OLE DB for OLAP Driver Properties

Object hierarchy: OLAP Data Access.SAP BW OLE DB for OLAP driver

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos Missing	0	Specifies the format of missing values
Measure Format	1	Specifies whether to support the measure format set in the remote database
Disable Max Zero Suppress	0	Specifies whether to disable the driver-level zero suppression of zeroes coming from the database
Suppress Inaccessible As Missing	0	Specifies whether to treat the secure cells as missing during a zero suppression operation
Disable Zero Check	0	Specifies whether to disable zero suppression, where 0=disable and 1=enable
Prompt Setting	1	Specifies whether to use the SAP logon instead of the IBM® Cognos® logon when prompted for signon information



---

# Chapter 16: IBM Cognos DecisionStream Settings

---

DecisionStream Series 7 creates integrated data marts by extracting operational data from multiple sources, merging and transforming the data to facilitate enterprise-wide reporting and analysis, and delivering the transformed data into coordinated data marts.

## Important and Common Changes

You must apply the DecisionStream settings in Windows® (p. 27) or in UNIX® (p. 47) to update your environment with any changes.

## IBM Cognos DecisionStream Designer

You can configure the following categories for DecisionStream Designer.

### General Properties

**Note:** There are no visible parameters in this category.

### Path Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos DecisionStream.IBM Cognos DecisionStream Designer.Path

Property	Default value	Description
DS_SCCS_DIR	<i>installation_location</i> \ DecisionStream\SCCS	The location of the source code control work area.

## IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services Client

You can configure the following categories for DecisionStream Network Services Client.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos DecisionStream.IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services Client.General

Property	Default value	Description
Default Protocol For Remote Connections	SOAP	The protocol used for remote connections. The SOAP or Sockets protocol may be used.

Property	Default value	Description
Default Port For Remote Connections	28010	The port number for the remote service. This value must be the same as the Serverxml_port property if using the SOAP server or the Port property for the Socket server.
Logging Severity	2	The level of logging for the client. A value from 1 to 5 can be set, where 1 represents the most verbose and 5 represents the least verbose logging.

## Path Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos DecisionStream.IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services Client.Path

Property	Default value	Description
DS_JAVA_HOME	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\jre\1.6.0_01	The Java™ home path.
AXIS_ROOT	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\axis\1.1.3173.0\webapps\axis\WEB-INF\lib	The location of the AXIS component.
DS_NET_LOG_DIR	<i>installation_location</i> \decisionstream\dsnetlog	The location of the DecisionStream Network Services log directory.
DS_STATUS_DIR	<i>installation_location</i> \decisionstream\status	The location of the DecisionStream Network Services status directory.

## IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services SOAP Server

You can configure the following categories for DecisionStream Network Services SOAP Server.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos DecisionStream.IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services SOAP Server.General

Property	Default value	Description
serverxml_shutdownport	28012	The shutdown port number.
serverxml_port	28010	The SOAP server port number. This value must be the same as the Default Port for Remote Connections property.  If this value is changed, the SOAP service must be restarted.
serverxml_connectionTimeout	60000	The Apache Tomcat server connection timeout value, in seconds. Set this value to -1 to disable connection timeouts.
serverxml_enableLookups	true	Specifies whether to enable DNS timeouts. Set this value to false to disable DNS timeouts.
serverxml_redirectPort	28011	The redirect port.
serverxml_appBase	webapps	The pathname of the Web applications to be executed in this virtual host. This value can be an absolute path, or a path that is relative to the CATALINA_HOME directory. If this value is not specified, the relative value webapps will be used.
serverxml_path	/axis	The server xml path.
SOAP Server Logging Severity	2	The level of logging for the SOAP server. A value from 1 to 5 can be set, where 1 represents the most verbose and 5 represents the least verbose logging.

## Path Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos DecisionStream.IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services SOAP Server.Path

Property	Default value	Description
DS_JAVA_HOME	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\jre\1.6.0_01	The Java™ home path.
DS_CATALINA_HOME	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\tomcat\4.1.18.3236.0	The location of the application server.
DS_CATALINA_CLASSPATH	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\dsnet.jar; <i>installation_location</i> \bin\jre\1.6.0_01\lib\tools.jar; <i>installation_location</i> \bin\tomcat\4.1.18.3236.0\bin\bootstrap.jar	The Catalina class path.
DS_NET_LOG_DIR	<i>installation_location</i> \decisionstream\dsnetlog	The location of the SOAP server log directory.

## IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services Socket Server

You can configure the following categories for DecisionStream Network Services Socket Server.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos DecisionStream.IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services Socket Server.General

Property	Default value	Description
Service Access Password	*****	The server access password for the DecisionStream Network server.
Sockets Server Logging Severity	2	The level of logging for the Sockets server. A value from 1 to 5 can be set, where 1 represents the most verbose and 5 represents the least verbose logging.

Property	Default value	Description
Port	27010	The Sockets port number. This value must be the same as the Default Port for Remote Connections property.  If this value is changed, the Socket service must be restarted.

## Path Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos DecisionStream.IBM Cognos DecisionStream Network Services Socket Server.Path

Property	Default value	Description
DS_JAVA_HOME	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\jre\1.6.0_01	The Java™ home path.
DS_CATALINA_HOME	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\tomcat\4.1.18.3236.0	The Catalina home path.
DS_CLASSPATH	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\dsnet.jar	The Catalina class path.
DS_NET_LOG_DIR	<i>installation_location</i> \decisionstream\dsnetlog	The location of the Sockets log directory.
DS_STATUS_DIR	<i>installation_location</i> \DecisionStream\status	The location of the status directory.
DS_NETXFER_DIR	<i>installation_location</i> \DecisionStream\Xfer	The location of the transfer directory.

## IBM Cognos DecisionStream Runtime

You can configure the following categories for IBM® Cognos® DecisionStream Runtime.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos DecisionStream.IBM Cognos DecisionStream Runtime.General

Property	Default value	Description
Install Location	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\	The location where Decision-Stream is installed.
Windows Directory	\WINNT or \Windows	The location where Windows is installed on the computer being configured.
Windows System Directory	\WINNT\system32	The location where the Windows system directory is installed on the computer being configured.
DS_MAX_RECURSION	100	The maximum recursion depth for user-defined functions.

## Path Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos DecisionStream.IBM Cognos DecisionStream Runtime.Path

Property	Default value	Description
DS_LOG_DIR	<i>installation_location</i> \DecisionStream\Log	The location of the Decision-Stream log files.
DS_DATA_DIR	<i>installation_location</i> \DecisionStream\Data	The location of the Decision-Stream data files.

## Program Locations Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos DecisionStream.IBM Cognos DecisionStream Runtime.Program Location

Property	Default value	Description
DS_DB2_LOADER		The location of the DB2 loader program.
DS_INFORMIX_LOADER		The location of the Informix loader program.
DS_MSSQLSERVER_BCP		The location of the Bulk Copy (BCP) loader program.

Property	Default value	Description
DS_REDBRICK_LOADER		The location of the Redbrick loader program.
DS_TERADATA_FASTLOAD		The location of the Teradata Fastload loader program.
DS_TERADATA_MULTI-LOAD		The location of the Teradata Multiload loader program.
DS_TERADATA_TPUMP		The location of the Teradata TPump loader program.
DS_TRANSFORMER		The location of the Power-Play® Transformer loader program.



---

# Chapter 17: IBM Cognos Finance Settings

---

IBM® Cognos® Finance is an enterprise-wide financial program that integrates multi-currency finance, budgeting, forecasting, and reporting by combining financial data from multiple sources and systems.

## Important and Common Changes

This is a Windows® application which you should not have to configure. However, you must apply the IBM® Cognos® Finance settings to update your environment with any changes.

## IBM Cognos Finance

Configuration Manager maintains some specific settings for IBM® Cognos® Finance. Other settings are initialized after the installation.

## Excel Integration

You can configure the following properties for the Excel Integration category.

### Notes

- Changes are applied only if the correct version of Microsoft® Excel is installed on the computer that you are planning to configure.
- The default value for the property is determined by the **Trust access to Visual Basic Project** check box (**Tools, Macro, Security, Trusted Sources** tab) setting specified in Microsoft Excel.

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Finance.IBM Cognos Finance.Excel Integration.

Property	Default Value	Description
Allow Programmatic Access to Excel XP VBA Project	0	Specifies whether integration of IBM Cognos Finance with Microsoft Excel XP is enabled.  0 = False 1 = True
Allow Programmatic Access to Excel 2003 VBA Project	0	Specifies whether integration of IBM Cognos Finance with Microsoft Excel 2003 is enabled.  0 = False 1 = True

## Resolving Error Messages

IBM Cognos Finance also checks for other configuration settings, including the presence of incompatible software components, such as MDAC and Internet Explorer. Although these settings cannot be changed through Configuration Manager, it can alert you to the nature of the problem.

The **Results** window shows any validation errors, warnings, or problem messages that relate to IBM Cognos Finance after validating or applying your changes. To resolve any errors, choose one of the following actions.

Configuration Error Message	Solution
Microsoft Excel XP has a security setting that prevents the function of some IBM Cognos Finance features. (Applies only to computers with Excel XP installed.)	Enable IBM Cognos Finance to Integrate with Microsoft Excel XP by changing the value of the <b>Allow Programmatic Access to Excel XP VBA Project</b> property to True (1).
Microsoft Excel2003 has a security setting that prevents the function of some IBM Cognos Finance features. (Applies only to computers with Excel 2003 installed.)	Enable IBM Cognos Finance to Integrate with Microsoft Excel 2003 by changing the value of the <b>Allow Programmatic Access to Excel 2003 VBA Project</b> property to True (1)
The version 2.8 or higher of MDAC is required.	Install the upgrade to MDAC from the Microsoft Web site.
The version 5.5 or higher of Internet Explorer is required.	Install the upgrade to Internet Explorer from the Microsoft Web site. Refer to the System Requirements chapter in the IBM Cognos Finance <i>Installation Guide</i> .

## IBM Cognos Finance for IIS

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Finance.IBM Cognos Finance for IIS.General

Property	Default Value	Description
Automatically configure IIS?	No	Specifies whether to configure the IIS Web server for IBM® Cognos® Finance.  Set the property to No if you are not configuring a computer with IIS or have already configured the IIS Web server for IBM Cognos Finance.

## IBM Cognos Finance Network API Service

When you apply this setting, you will create the IBM® Cognos® Finance Network API service. You can use Configuration Manager to start or stop this service, by right-clicking on the setting name, **IBM Cognos Finance Network API Service**, and selecting **Start** or **Stop**.

If you have not installed the correct version of .NET Framework, you will receive an error message when you validate, and the apply will fail.

For more information regarding .NET Framework, see the IBM Cognos Finance *Installation Guide*.

## IBM Cognos Finance Web Service

When you apply this setting, you will create the IBM® Cognos® Finance Web Service, which is used for the Finance Web client and PowerPlay® integration. You can use Configuration Manager to start or stop this service, by right-clicking on the setting name, **IBM Cognos Finance Web Service**, and selecting **Start** or **Stop**.



---

# Chapter 18: IBM Cognos Planning Settings

---

You configure IBM® Cognos® Planning using Configuration Manager. You will need to configure IBM® Cognos® Planning - Analyst and IBM® Cognos® Planning - Contributor if you have installed both.

## IBM Cognos - Contributor Data Server

You can configure the following properties for IBM® Cognos® - Contributor Data Server.

### General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Planning.IBM Cognos 8 - Contributor Data Server.General

Property	Default value	Description
Server Name		Identifies the name of the computer running the IBM Cognos - Contributor Data Server  Note: We recommend that you do not change the value of this field.
Port Number	8800	Identifies the port number on which the IBM Cognos - Contributor Data Server is listening.
Maximum Concurrent ACE Sessions	5	The maximum count of concurrent requests that the IBM Cognos - Contributor Data Server will process at any given time.
Elist Access Cache Timeout (in minutes)	60	Establishes the refresh interval for the cache of Elsit access rights in IBM Cognos - Contributor Data Server.
Cell Annotations	<i>Hide</i>	Indicates whether or not annotations will be displayed in IBM® Cognos® studios.

Property	Default value	Description
Signature Password		<p>An encrypted, shared secret password that provides access to real-time Contributor data from IBM Cognos scheduled reports and agents.</p> <p>This password is case-sensitive and must match the Signature password property that you enter in the Data Access/IBM® Cognos® Planning/Contributor Data Server/Signature Password field when configuring IBM Cognos.</p>

## IBM Cognos Planning Shared

You can configure the following shared properties for IBM® Cognos® Planning.

### General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Planning.Shared.General

Property	Default value	Description
Temp Directory		Location of temporary files.
Logging	EP Log	Default application logging location.
Oracle ODBC Driver		Oracle ODBC driver to use to create the Transformer Model in the publish to PPES extension.
CRN Gateway or IBM Cognos Dispatcher URI		Identifies the ReportNet gateway or the IBM Cognos BI dispatcher.
Framework Manager Script Player Location	<i>installation_location/bin/BMTScriptPlayer.exe</i>	Location of the script player.

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos BI Server	IBM Cognos or ReportNet 1.1	Identifies the product to use to create a Framework Manager model in the Generate Framework Manager Model extension.

## Cache Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Planning.Shared.Cache

Property	Default value	Description
JCE Cache Name	jcecache	Name of JCE cache store.
JCE Cache Clean Up Days	1	Days between JCE cache clean operations.
JCE Cache Clean Up Per Process	1	Number of cache clean operations per process.
JCE Cache Shrink Policy	5	JCE cache shrink policy.
JCE Cache Compression Library	epCacheCompression.dll	Name of JCE cache compression library.
JCE Cache Encryption Library	epCacheEncryption.dll	Name of JCE cache encryption library.
Offline Grid File Path	<i>installation_location/bin</i>	Location of offline grid file path.
Offline Grid Documentation Path	<i>installation_location/documentation</i>	Location of the offline grid documentation.

## IBM Cognos Planning - Analyst

You can configure the following properties for IBM® Cognos® Planning - Analyst.

### General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Planning.IBM Cognos Planning - Analyst.General

Property	Default value	Description
FileSys.ini Location	<i>installation_location/bin</i>	Location of the Analyst FileSys.ini file
Maximum Workspace Size	64000	Sets the workspace size, in kilobytes (kb)

## IBM Cognos Planning - Analyst Excel Add-in

You can configure the following properties for IBM® Cognos® Planning - Analyst Excel Add-in.

### General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Planning.IBM Cognos Planning - Analyst *Excel* Add-in.General

Property	Default value	Description
Enable Terminal Services Support	No	Indicates to Analyst Add-in for <i>Excel</i> that terminal services is enabled on the computer.

## IBM Cognos Planning - Contributor

You can configure the following properties for IBM® Cognos® Planning - Contributor.

### Contributor Administration Tools General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Planning.Contributor Administration Tools.General

Property	Default value	Description
Max Elist Count	3000	The maximum number of Elist items displayed in the Contributor Administration Console before the hierarchy is flattened.

### Contributor Common Components General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Planning.Contributor Common Components.General

Property	Default value	Description
Language	EN	Runtime language (English (EN), French (FR) or German (DE)).
Email Separator	;	Character used for separating email addresses.

## IBM Cognos Enterprise Planning Service

You can configure the following properties for the IBM® Cognos® Enterprise Planning Service.

### IBM Cognos Enterprise Planning Service General Properties

Object Hierarchy: Services.IBM Cognos Enterprise Planning Service.General

Property	Default value	Description
Planning Service Startup Pause Time (seconds)	0	The number of seconds the service should pause during startup to allow unknown dependent services to start.
Database Connection Timeout (seconds)	15	The number of seconds the service should wait while attempting a database connection.
Database Open Record Timeout (seconds)	15	The number of seconds the service should wait while attempting to open a database record.
Dropped Database Detection Polling Interval (seconds)	5	The number of seconds to pause between database reconnection attempts.
Shutdown Jobs Timeout (seconds)	100	The timeout period for job stopping during an SCM initiated service shutdown.


Property	Default value	Description
Startup PAD Polling Timeout (seconds)	120	The amount of time before Planning Application Domain (PAD) data store connection errors are logged during service setup.

---

# Chapter 19: Samples Database Information Settings

---

The Samples Database Information settings let your computer connect to the databases. The properties specify information, such as database file location, software driver file type and location, connection strings, and access parameters.

The Samples Database Information settings apply to Windows® computers only. Most of the Samples Database settings appear only in Advanced view. To see the Advanced view in Windows, click Advanced  from the View menu.

**Tip:** For a description of any Samples Database Information properties, place your cursor over the property.

These settings are read-only parameters that are preconfigured and cannot be changed by users. They are provided so that you can test your installation and configuration to ensure that they are valid and that your IBM® Cognos® products are operating properly.

You must apply the Sample Database Information settings in Windows ([p. 27](#)) or in UNIX® ([p. 47](#)) to update your environment with any changes.

The Samples Database Information files are installed in the same location as other IBM Cognos components. Do not move the files, or they will not work.

For more information about the samples included with IBM Cognos products, see the *Installation Testing and Samples Setup Guide*.



---

# Chapter 20: Services Settings

---

Several IBM® Cognos® products use common tools or services that you need to configure only once using the **Services** component in Configuration Manager.

## Important and Common Changes

You must apply the Services settings to update your environment with any changes.

You may need to change the following properties:

- Services.Access Manager-Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server.Computer
- Services.Access Manager-Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server.Port/SSL Port
- Services.Access Manager-Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server.Base Distinguished Name (DN)
- Services.PowerPlay Data Services.Cache
- Services.PowerPlay Data Services.Firewall Port

## Access Manager - Administration Automation

There are no visible parameters in this component.

## Access Manager - Directory Server

You can configure the following categories for Access Manager - Directory Server.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General

Because IBM® Cognos® products typically share a single directory server, you only need to configure the properties in the following table once for an application.

Property	Default value	Description
Are you sure you want to configure this directory server?	No	Specifies whether to configure the directory server.  If you change the value to Yes, specify the name, signon, and password for the namespace administrator.

Property	Default value	Description
Schema Version	Current	Unlike previous releases, different schema versions are not available. You can not change this setting.
Server Type	Auto Detect	The type of directory server to configure, one of Active Directory, ADAM, Auto Detect, IBM Tivoli Directory Server, or Sun ONE/Sun Java™ System.
Computer	The name of your computer.	<p>The name of the computer or IP address where the directory server is installed.</p> <p>Note: To support publishing from the PowerPlay® Enterprises Server to IBM® Cognos® ReportNet or IBM® Cognos® BI, you must use the same format to identify the location of the directory server when you configure IBM® Cognos® Series 7 and IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI. For example, if you use your computer name to identify the location of the directory server in IBM Cognos Series 7, you must use your computer name when you add the IBM Cognos Series 7 namespace to IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI. If you use your computer name in one location and IP address in the other, publishing from PowerPlay Enterprise Server to IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI will fail.</p>
Port	389 (Windows), 1389 (UNIX)	The port number used by the directory server.

Property	Default value	Description
Base distinguished name (DN)	o=Cognos, c=CA	The base distinguished name of the directory server.
Unrestricted User distinguished name (DN)	cn=Directory Manager	The distinguished name of the unrestricted user.
Unrestricted User password	*****	The password of the unrestricted user.
Primary ticket service	The name of your computer:9010	<p>The primary Access Manager Server computer name and ticket service port associated with the directory server to configure.</p> <p>The port number must be the same as the port number specified in Service.Access Manager - Server.General.Ticket Service on the primary Access Manager Server computer.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must specify a primary Access Manager Server.</p>
Secondary ticket service (1, 2, 3, and 4)	none	<p>To support ticket service failover and load balancing, specify additional ticket service computer names and port numbers.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Secondary ticket services are optional.</p>
Enable Ticket Service Load Balancing	No	To enable load balancing between multiple ticket services, specify secondary ticket services and select <b>Yes</b> .

Property	Default value	Description
Default Namespace Name	Default	The name of the namespace to create and use by default. If a directory server namespace exists, changing this property will not create a new namespace or change the default namespace.
Default Namespace Administrator Name	Administrator	The name of the administrator of the default namespace.  The administrator name, signon, and password is required only when you are creating a new namespace.
Default Namespace Administrator Signon	Administrator	The basic signon of the administrator of the default namespace.
Default Namespace Administrator Password	*****	The password of the administrator of the default namespace.

## External User Support

If your primary directory is a Microsoft® Active Directory that was previously configured for use with IBM Cognos products, you must run the amADUpdate utility before configuring external user support. For more information, see the Access Manager Administrator Guide.

You can configure the following categories for external user support.

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.External user support

Property	Default value	Description
Enabled	No	Specifies if external user support is enabled
External User Root distinguished name (DN)	cn=users, o=Cognos, c=CA	The base distinguished name of the external user branch
External User Objectclass	inetorgperson	The objectclass name of the external user objects

Property	Default value	Description
External User Naming Attribute	uid	The naming attribute of the external user objects. For example, if the external user DN format is uid=<user>,ou=people,o=company,c=country the naming attribute is uid.
External Folder Objectclasses	organizationalunit	The objectclass name of the external folder objects
External User Data Encoding	utf-8	Specifies the encoding of the external user data stored in the LDAP directory server
Access External Users from a Secondary Directory Server	No	Specifies that user information is located in a secondary directory server
Secondary Directory server Host		Specifies the host name where the secondary directory server is installed
Secondary Directory Server Port		Specifies the port number for the secondary directory server
Secondary Directory Server Credential DN		Specifies the distinguished name (DN) of an IBM Cognos directory server administrator
Secondary Directory Server Credential Password		Specifies the administrator password
Secondary Directory Server Requires SSL	No	Specifies whether the secondary directory server requires SSL

### Description Attribute

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.External user support.Description Attribute

Property	Default value	Description
LDAP Attribute Name	description	The LDAP attribute name used to identify the name of the external user. Leave this parameter empty if you do not want to make use of this attribute in the IBM Cognos products.
Must exist	No	If this attribute is mandatory in the objectclass definition, set this parameter to Yes.
Can be modified	No	If this attribute can be modified through the IBM Cognos products, set this parameter to Yes.

### Email Attribute

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.External user support.Email Attribute

Property	Default value	Description
LDAP Attribute Name	mail	The LDAP attribute name used to identify the name of the external user. Leave this parameter empty if you do not want to make use of this attribute in the IBM Cognos products.
Must exist	No	If this attribute is mandatory in the objectclass definition, set this parameter to Yes.
Can be modified	No	If this attribute can be modified through the IBM Cognos products, set this parameter to Yes.

### Givenname Attribute

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.External user support.Givenname Attribute

Property	Default value	Description
LDAP Name	givenname	The LDAP attribute name used to identify the name of the external user. Leave this parameter empty if you do not want to make use of this attribute in the IBM Cognos products.
Must exist	No	If this attribute is mandatory in the objectclass definition, set this parameter to Yes.
Can be modified	No	If this attribute can be modified through the IBM Cognos products, set this parameter to Yes.

### Name Attribute

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.External user support.Name Attribute

Property	Default value	Description
LDAP Attribute Name	cn	The LDAP attribute name used to identify the name of the external user. This attribute can not be empty.
Must exist	Yes	This parameter is read-only. It is for your information only. The attribute must exist in the user object.
Can be modified	No	This parameter is read-only. It is for your information only. The attribute cannot be modified through IBM Cognos products.

### OS Signon Attribute

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.External user support.OS Signon Attribute

Property	Default value	Description
LDAP Attribute Name	NTUserDomainID	The LDAP attribute name used to identify the name of the external user. Leave this parameter empty if you do not want to make use of this attribute in the IBM Cognos products.
Must exist	Yes	This parameter is read-only. It is for your information only. If specifying an OS signon attribute value, the attribute must exist in the user object.
Can be modified	No	This parameter is read-only. It is for your information only. If specifying an OS signon attribute value, the attribute cannot be modified through IBM Cognos products.

### Phone Attribute

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.External user support.Phone Attribute

Property	Default value	Description
LDAP Attribute Name	telephonenumber	The LDAP attribute name used to identify the name of the external user. Leave this parameter empty if you do not want to make use of this attribute in the IBM Cognos products.
Must exist	No	If this attribute is mandatory in the objectclass definition, set this parameter to Yes.
Can be modified	No	If this attribute can be modified through the IBM Cognos products, set this parameter to Yes.

### Preferred Language Attribute

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.External user support.Preferred language Attribute

Property	Default value	Description
LDAP Attribute Name	preferredlanguage	The LDAP attribute name used to identify the name of the external user. Leave this parameter empty if you do not want to make use of this attribute in the IBM Cognos products.
Must exist	No	If this attribute is mandatory in the objectclass definition, set this parameter to Yes.
Can be modified	No	If this attribute can be modified through the IBM Cognos products, set this parameter to Yes.

### Surname Attribute

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.External user support.Surname Attribute

Property	Default value	Description
LDAP Attribute Name	sn	The LDAP attribute name used to identify the name of the external user. Leave this parameter empty if you do not want to make use of this attribute in the IBM Cognos products.
Must exist	No	If this attribute is mandatory in the objectclass definition, set this parameter to Yes.
Can be modified	No	If this attribute can be modified through the IBM Cognos products, set this parameter to Yes.

## Access Manager - Runtime

You must configure the following categories for Access Manager Runtime for each computer that uses IBM® Cognos® security.

### Authentication Source

You can configure the following categories for Authentication Source.

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager-Runtime.Authentication Source

Property	Default value	Description
Default	Directory Server	The authentication source for IBM Cognos products.

### Directory Server Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager-Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server

Property	Default value	Description
Computer	The name of your computer.	<p>The name of the computer or IP address where the directory server is installed.</p> <p>To support publishing from the PowerPlay® Enterprises Server to IBM® Cognos® ReportNet or IBM® Cognos® BI, you must use the same format to identify the location of the directory server when you configure IBM® Cognos® Series 7 and IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI. For example, if you use your computer name to identify the location of the directory server in IBM Cognos Series 7, you must use your computer name when you add the IBM Cognos Series 7 namespace to IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI. If you use your computer name in one location and IP address in the other, publishing from PowerPlay Enterprise Server to IBM Cognos ReportNet or IBM Cognos BI will fail.</p>
Port/SSL Port	389	The port number used by the directory server.
Base Distinguished Name (DN)	o=Cognos, c=CA	The base distinguished name of the directory server.
Timeout	0	The number of seconds to wait for a response.

Property	Default value	Description
Default Namespace	none	<p>The name of the Access Manager namespace to be used at runtime.</p> <p>By default, this property is empty. If the property is left empty, the directory server's default namespace will be used.</p> <p>If you must authenticate to a specific namespace or if your directory server does not have a default namespace defined, enter the name of the namespace to be used.</p>
Local Cache Enabled (Windows® only)	Yes or No	<p>Specifies whether to enable the local cache for the directory server.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you have only IBM Cognos client products installed, the default is Yes. For IBM Cognos server products, the default is No. For computers that include IBM Cognos server products, it is recommended that you do not change this value to Yes.</p>
Local Cache File (Windows only)	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\default.lac	The location and name of the local cache file.
SSL Enabled	No	<p>Specifies whether to enable SSL for this directory server.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If SSL is enabled, ensure that the SSL port number is used Port/SSL Port.</p>
SSL Certificate Database	none	The certificate database to use if SSL is enabled.

## LAE Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager-Runtime.Authentication Source.LAE

Property	Default value	Description
File	none	The .lae file to use.
Default Namespace	none	The name of the namespace to use by default in this .lae file.

### SSL Certificate Database Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager-Runtime.Authentication Source.SSL Certificate Database

Property	Default value	Description
SSL Certificate Database	none	The certificate database to use if SSL is enabled.

## Access Manager - Server

The Access Manager Server is an IBM® Cognos® security component that manages two services:

- a ticket service

The service that issues tickets used to maintain single signons for users of Web-based IBM Cognos applications. The tickets are issued for a specified period so that users can access multiple IBM Cognos applications without having to reenter authentication data.

- an authentication service

The service used for authenticating users of Web-based IBM Cognos applications. By default, this service is not enabled.

An Access Manager Server can be configured as a ticket service or an authentication service, or both.

At least one Access Manager Server is needed for each IBM Cognos application. We recommend that you install it on the same computer as the directory server. To implement failover and load balancing for the Access Manager Server, install additional Access Manager Servers and configure load balancing in Configuration Manager.

You can configure the following categories for Access Manager - Server.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager- Server.General

Property	Default value	Description
Services	Ticket Service	<p>Specifies the services provided by the Access Manager Server: Ticket Service, Authentication Service, or Both.</p> <p>At least one Access Manager Server ticket service must be enabled.</p> <p>The Access Manager Server authentication service is optional, and is used only in web-based deployments. Typically, you select Authentication Service for distributed installations, where the authentication service is on a different computer than the ticket service.</p>
Number of Threads	5	Specifies the number of threads used by the Access Manager Server to process requests.
Maximum Connections	500	Specifies the maximum number of network connections that the Access Manager Server will allow.

### Authentication Service

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager- Server.General.Authentication Service

Property	Default value	Description
Port	8070	The port number to be used for the Authentication Service.
SSL Enabled	No	<p>Specifies if the Authentication Service should use SSL.</p> <p>You must complete other configuration steps before enabling Secure Sockets Layer (SSL). For more information, see the Access Manager Administrator Guide.</p>

Property	Default value	Description
Private Key Location	none	If SSL is enabled, specifies the location of the SSL private key.
Private Key Password Policy	Stored	<p>If Stored is selected, the Access Manager Server will use the value entered in the property Private Key Password and no prompting will occur.</p> <p>If Prompt is selected, the Access Manager Server will prompt for the private key password when starting and the locally stored password will be cleared. On Windows®, you must change the properties for the IBM® Cognos® Access Manager Server service to allow interaction with the desktop.</p>
Private Key Password	*****	Specifies the password for the SSL private key if SSL is enabled and the Private Key Password Policy is set to Stored. If the Private Key Password Policy is set to Prompt, this value is ignored.

### SSL Ciphers

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager- Server.General.Authentication Service.SSL Ciphers

Property	Default value	Description
DES(56) - SHA1	Enabled	Data Encryption Standard (56 bits) with Secure Hash Algorithm
RC2(56) - MD5	Enabled	RSA Security RC2 (56 bits) with Message Digest 5
RC4(56) - SHA1	Enabled	RSA Security RC4 (56 bits) with Secure Hash Algorithm

Property	Default value	Description
RC4(56) - MD5	Enabled	RSA Security RC4 (56 bits) with Message Digest 5
DES(40) - SHA1	Enabled	Data Encryption Standard (40 bits) with Secure Hash Algorithm
RC2(40) - MD5	Enabled	RSA Security RC2 (40 bits) with Message Digest 5
RC4(40) - MD5	Enabled	RSA Security RC4 (40 bits) with Message Digest 5

### Ticket Service

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager- Server.General.Ticket Service

Property	Default value	Description
Port	9010	The port number to be used for the ticket service.
Ticket Duration	60	Specifies the number of minutes that a ticket is valid when a web browser is idle.
Enable Event Log	No	Specifies whether event logging for the ticket service is enabled.
Event Log File Period	Weekly	Specifies how often a new log file is created.
Event Log File Path	<i>installation_location\cern\bin\logs</i>	Specifies the location of the ticket service event log.

## Access Manager - Web Authentication

### Authentication Services

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager-Web Authentication.Authentication Services

Property	Default value	Description
Load Balance	No	Specifies if the authentication servers should be load balanced

### Primary Authentication Service

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager-Web Authentication.Authentication Services.Primary Authentication Service

Property	Default value	Description
Host	none	The name of the Access Manager Server computer
Port	8070	The port number for the authentication service
SSL Enabled	No	Specifies whether SSL is enabled for the authentication service
SSL Certificate Database	none	If SSL is enabled, specifies the certificate database

### Secondary Authentication Service 1, 2, 3, ...

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager-Web Authentication.Authentication Services.Secondary Authentication Service *n*

Property	Default value	Description
Host	none	The name of the secondary Access Manager Server computer
Port	8070	The port number for the authentication service
SSL Enabled	No	Specifies whether SSL is enabled for the authentication service
SSL Certificate Database	none	If SSL is enabled, specifies the certificate database

## Cookie Settings

Object hierarchy: Services.Access Manager-Web Authentication.Cookie Settings

Property	Default value	Description
Path	none	The path that is specified in the cookie.
Domain	none	The domain that is specified in the cookie.
Secure Flag Enabled	No	Specifies if the secure flag is enabled in the cookie.
Allow Third Party Redirection	Yes	Specifies if third party redirection is allowed. If you select No, you must specify a value for Domain.

## IBM Cognos Application Firewall

IBM® Cognos® Application Firewall is a tool designed to supplement the existing security infrastructure for IBM® Cognos® Series 7. It is a plug-in module that enhances security features for the IBM® Cognos® gateways by updating the gateway components in the *installation\_location/cgi-bin* directory.

**Note:** Configuration changes to the IBM Cognos Application Firewall are not applied until you restart your Web server if you are using NSAPI or ISAPI gateways.

## General Properties

Object Hierarchy: Services.IBM Cognos Application Firewall.General

Property	Default value	Description
Firewall enabled	True	<p>Specifies whether to use IBM Cognos Application Firewall.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> The IBM Cognos Application Firewall is an essential component of IBM Cognos security, helping to provide protection against penetration vulnerabilities. Disabling the IBM Cognos Application Firewall will remove this protection; therefore, this should not be done under normal circumstances.</p>
Valid domain list	none	<p>A comma separated list of valid domain names.</p> <p>If you are using a proxy server, you must add the host name or the Fully Qualified Domain Name to the valid domain list. If you have configured domain level cookies, you must include the domains in this domain list.</p> <p>The format of domains is <i>machine-name.domain</i>. For example, <i>yourcomputer.your-company.com</i>.</p>

Property	Default value	Description
Parameter signing enabled	False	<p>Specifies whether to use parameter signing.</p> <p>Signing negatively affects CGI gateway performance.</p> <p>If you are using the PowerPlay® ISAPI gateway and IBM Cognos Application Firewall parameter-signing is enabled, you must modify your Windows® PATH variable on the computer where the PowerPlay ISAPI gateway is installed to show the full path to the IBM Cognos Series 7 cgi-bin directory. For more information, see the <i>IBM Cognos Series 7 Solution Installation Guide</i>.</p>
Critical validation failures	True	<p>Specifies whether validation failures result in firewall rejections, which causes the application to stop.</p>
CSS character checking enabled	False	<p>Specifies whether to enable cross-site scripting (CSS) character checking. If enabled, IBM Cognos Application Firewall URL-encodes CSS characters to prevent third-party CSS tools from blocking them.</p> <p>If you enable CSS character checking, you must use the same setting for all gateway computers in a distributed IBM Cognos environment. You will receive errors if CSS character checking is enabled on only some gateway computers.</p>
CSS character list	<','>	<p>A comma separated list of the CSS characters checked for by the third-party CSS tool.</p>

## Log Properties

Object Hierarchy: Services.IBM Cognos Application Firewall.Log

Property	Default value	Description
Log method	0-No logging	The log method to use: 0-No logging 1-File logger 2-OS logger 3-Custom logger
File logger filename	none	A name for the file logger. A relative filename uses the environment temporary directory.
Custom logger shared library	none	The name of the log library file dynamically loaded by the IBM Cognos Application Firewall.
Log string size limit	1000	The maximum size of the strings written to the log. Set to 0 for no limit.

## ObjectStore Database

You can configure the following categories for the ObjectStore database.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.ObjectStore Database.General

Property	Default value	Description
ObjectStore Location	none	The location where ObjectStore is installed.

## PDF Rendering

You can configure the following categories for PDF Rendering.

### Font Embedding Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.PDF Rendering.Font Embedding

Property	Default value	Description
Use Font Embed List	If the Default Font is set and found, the value is 1. Otherwise, the value is 0.	Specifies whether to embed only fonts listed in the Font Embed List property.
Font Embed List	<p>If a Latin-1 language is used and the Default Font is set and found, the value is "Swiss721 SWM;Arial;Courier New;Times New Roman"</p> <p>If a non-Latin-1 language is used and the Default Font is set and found, the default is "<i>locale-specific Andale</i> WT;Arial;Courier New;Times New Roman"</p> <p>If the Default Font is not found, the value is "Arial;Courier New;Times New Roman"</p>	A semicolon-separated list of fonts that must be rendered reliably.
Embed these Licensed fonts	" "	Specifies additional licensed fonts to embed. You must gain permission from vendor to include licensed fonts.

**Note:** When you install an IBM Cognos Series 7 product without fonts, then apply the configuration in Configuration Manager, the embedded font list of the PDF Rendering Service contains only a default list of OS fonts.

However, if you later install an IBM Cognos Series 7 product with fonts, the embedded font list is not updated after configuration. Therefore the fonts are still not available to the PDF Rendering Service.

To update the PDF rendering service embedded fonts list in Configuration Manager, follow these steps:

1. Locate **Services/PDF Rendering** in the left pane.
2. Right-click and select **Set to Default**.

The font list located in **Services/PDF Rendering/Font Embedding/Font Embed List** and the **Services/PDF Rendering/Font Paths/Default Font** entries is updated to include the installed fonts.

3. Apply the new configuration

If you do not run Configuration Manager and apply settings between product installations, the PDF Rendering settings are not applied and this issue does not occur.

## Font Paths Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.PDF Rendering.Font Paths

Property	Default value	Description
System Font Files Paths	<b>Windows</b> C:\WINNT\FONTS; <i>installation_location</i> \bin\FONTS <b>UNIX</b> <i>&lt;installation_location&gt;</i> /bin/fonts	Location of font definition files.  Additional font definitions can be placed in the server font path.
Default Font	If a Latin-1 language is used, the default is Swiss, otherwise the default is a locale-specific Andale WT font.	The default font used in PDF images.  If this field is blank, Times is used as the default.

## General Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.PDF Rendering.General

Property	Default value	Description
Default Encoding	" "	The Default Encoding is used by PDF Rendering when it accepts user data (such as Font Names or Path strings)
Simulate Patterns (as bitmap)	1	Specifies whether to represent patterns in PDF documents using a bitmap simulation technique, or to substitute patterns with solid fill colors.
Page-by-Page accessible PDF (linearized)	1	Specifies whether to allow page-by-page access without opening the entire document.

## URL Color Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.PDF Rendering.URL Color

Property	Default Value	Notes
URL Color RGB	001	Specifies the color of URL links created in a PDF. Enter three numbers between 0.0 and 1.0 to specify the Red, Green and Blue components of the RGB value determining the URL link color

## PowerPlay Data Services

You can configure the following categories for PowerPlay® Data Services.

No configuration is required in UNIX®. However, you still must apply the settings in Windows® to update your environment with any changes.

### Cache Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.PowerPlay Data Services.Cache

Property	Default value	Description
Write Cache Size	32768	The cache size in kilobytes required to update a PowerPlay cube.
Read Cache Size	8192	The cache size in kilobytes required to read a PowerPlay cube.
Object Cache Size	4096	The cache size in kilobytes required by the client to use any cube, including non-PowerPlay cubes.  You may need to increase this value for a large cube.
Flush Percentage	500	The percentage of the cache memory that is released when the cache is full.  A value of 100 means 1%.

## Client Server Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.PowerPlay Data Services.Client Server

Property	Default Value	Notes
Local PowerCubes	True	An installed setting that you do not need to change.

## Firewall Port Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.PowerPlay Data Services.Firewall Port

Property	Default Value	Notes
Firewall Port	0	Used for secure environments, a port numbered from 1025 to 5000 that restricts PowerPlay Windows client communication with the query processor.  A value of 0 means the operating system will choose an available port ID.

## NAT Detection Timeout Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.PowerPlay Data Services.Firewall Port

Property	Default Value	Notes
NAT Detection Timeout	10	Time in seconds before a remote client defaults to a NAT (Network Address Translation) protocol for access to remote cubes. If network type is known, then enter -1 for a non-NAT network, or - 0 for a NAT network.

## UDA

You can configure the following categories for Universal Data Access (UDA).

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: Services.UDA.General

Property	Default value	Description
UDA Message File	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\srvcmsgs_en.msg	<p>The message file used by Universal Data Access.</p> <p>Change this value if you are switching between working environments and want to view messages in another language. To browse for other message files, select the value field, and then click the ellipsis button (...).</p>
DMDBINI Location	<i>installation_location</i> \bin	Location of the database information file.
Memory Size of Sort Buffer	512	<p>Memory size, in kilobytes.</p> <p>The value must be greater than 0.</p>
List of Temporary Directories	<b>Windows</b> \TEMP  <b>UNIX</b> /tmp	The location of temporary files spanning multiple directories.
Sybase CT-Lib Client Version (UNIX only)	12	<p>The version of the Sybase Adaptive Server Enterprise CT-Lib Gateway shared library for your database client.</p> <p>The gateway version is normally determined by IBM Cognos products at run time. The product will first try to load the gateway linked with Sybase 12, and then the gateway linked with Sybase 12.5. If you have the 12.5 client and the product can't load the gateway properly, you can change the default value to 12.5.</p>

Property	Default value	Description
ODBC Driver Manager (UNIX only)	NCR	Specifies the vendor of the ODBC Driver Manager installed.

## Windows Common Logon Server

There are no visible parameters in this component. Windows® Common Logon Server is available only on Windows.



---

# Chapter 21: IBM Cognos Tools Settings

---

Some IBM® Cognos® products share tools that you need to configure only once. Use the **Tools** component in Configuration Manager to configure the components described in this chapter.

## Important and Common Changes

You must apply the Tools settings to update your environment with any changes.

## PowerPrompts

IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Reporting includes the PowerPrompts Developer Studio, one of the administration tools shipped with Impromptu® Web Reports. It is installed by a default installation of Impromptu Administrator. This tool is used to create PowerPrompts applications for report consumers. A PowerPrompts application is a series of HTML pages that report consumers can use to select the information they want to see in a report. For example, report consumers can add

- columns to a report
- column formatting
- a report template
- conditional formatting
- filters

PowerPrompts applications can greatly reduce the number of reports maintained. Your report consumers can use the same report for many different queries by selecting just what they want to see.

A PowerPrompts application can contain any controls that are supported by HTML or Java, such as an easy-to-use calendar control, to select dates.

You must have Impromptu and a Web server installed and running on your computer before you can test your PowerPrompts application.

You can configure the following categories for PowerPrompts.

## Data Access Properties

Object hierarchy: Tools.PowerPrompts.Data Access

Property	Default value	Description
Port	2425	Port number used by the data access process to communicate with PowerPrompts server.

Property	Default value	Description
Data Servers Limit	0	Maximum number of additional data access servers that can service data requests.
Server idle life time	900	Number of seconds before an idle data access process is shut down.

## General Properties

Object hierarchy: Tools.PowerPrompts.General

Property	Default value	Description
Default Template (Windows® only)	<i>installation_location</i> \webcontent\powerprompts\template.htm	The default HTML template used by the PowerPrompts engine.
cgi-bin	Cognos/cgi-bin	The parameter that sets the cgi-bin location in the registry.
Documentation	cognos/help	The parameter that sets the documentation location in the registry.
webcontent	Cognos	The parameter that sets the webcontent location in the registry.

## Scheduler

You can configure the following categories for Scheduler.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: Tools.Scheduler.General

Property	Default value	Description
Scheduler Workspace	<i>installation_location</i> \bin\ User Workspace	Working directory of the user in a Scheduler session.

Property	Default value	Description
Error_Log_File	schederr.log	Log file created if there is an error.



---

## Chapter 22: Upfront Settings

---

Upfront is a customizable user interface that allows users to publish, search, organize, and view IBM® Cognos® reports and queries on the Web.

Upfront contains the following components:

- Upfront data store

This component contains the meta data that describes the NewsIndex. This includes the NewsBox folder hierarchy and information about NewsItems, which are items that point to reports.

- Upfront gateway

This component handles only Web requests. The gateway must be located on all Web servers that receive Upfront requests. When a request is received, an instance of the gateway is created to handle the request.

- Upfront server

This component receives Upfront requests from the gateway through the Upfront dispatcher. A dispatcher manages the requests queue and forwards the requests to the Upfront Server processes on the Dispatcher machine.

For information about Upfront administration configuration, see ["Server Administration Properties" \(p. 268\)](#).

### Important and Common Changes

You must apply the Upfront settings in Windows® or in UNIX® to update your environment with any changes.

If you install multiple versions of Upfront, or multiple instances of the same version of Upfront, on the same computer, you may need to change the following properties:

- Upfront.Shared.Data Store.Data Store Name
- Upfront.Shared.Data Store.Data Store Port
- Upfront.Shared.Data Store.Search Engine Port

**Note:** Changes that affect more than one Upfront component are typically made in the Upfront.Shared settings.

### Data Store

You can configure the following categories for Data Store.

## General Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Data Store.General

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Name	DataStore	The name of the Upfront data store.
Data Store Port	8150	The port number used by the Upfront data store.
Search Engine Port	4455	The port number used by the Upfront search engine.

## Gateway

You can configure the following categories for Gateway.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Gateway.General

Property	Default value	Description
Server Group Name	Upfront Server Group	The server group the gateway is associated with.
Web Content Path	<i>installation_location</i> \webcontent	The directory path for the Web content.
Web Program Alias	cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe	Specifies the virtual Web alias for the cgi-bin.
Loading Message	Loading Upfront ...	The message that appears when Upfront starts which is written to the default.htm and index.html files.
Logon Message	Go to Upfront Logon page.	The logon message that is written to the admin.htm file.

### Tuning Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Gateway.Tuning

Property	Default value	Description
Error Level	2	A category assigned to differentiate errors.

## Server

You can configure the following categories for Server.

### Administration Connection Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Server.Administration Connection

Property	Default value	Description
Server Administration Port	8031	The port number used by the Upfront administration server.

### Data Store Connection Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Server.Data Store Connection

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Host	The name of your computer.	The name of the computer on which the Upfront Data Store is installed.  You must confirm that this points to the correct data store port and host.
Data Store Name	DataStore	The name of the Upfront data store.
Data Store Port	8150	The port number of the Upfront data store.
Search Engine Host	The name of your computer.	The name of the computer on which the Upfront search engine is installed.
Search Engine Port	4455	The port number used by the Upfront search engine.

## General Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Server.General

Property	Default value	Description
Server Group Name	Upfront Server Group	The server group the Upfront Server is associated with.
Version Information Available	false	This value determines whether or not to display version information in HTTP describe calls when the IBM® Cognos® Application Firewall is enabled.

## Tracing Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Server.Tracing

Property	Default value	Description
Remote Trace Components	None	The components being traced: 1 - Upfront Administration 2 - Upfront Dispatcher 4 - Upfront Content server 8 - Upfront server 64 - Upfront Deployment server 79 - All components
Remote Trace Server	localhost	The Upfront computer traced by the trace server
Remote Trace File	RemoteTrace.txt	A file containing all the collected trace information
Remote Trace Port	8032	The port number used for remote tracing

## Tuning

You can configure the following categories for Tuning.

### Administration Server Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Server.Tuning.Administration Server

Property	Default value	Description
Refresh Interval	10	The number of minutes to wait before broadcasting administration data

## Dispatcher Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Server.Tuning.Dispatcher

Property	Default value	Description
Error Level	2	The error level that is referenced when the server writes to the event log
Dispatcher Max Thread Count	10	The maximum number of worker threads that the dispatcher can spawn
Dispatcher Listen Timeout	5	The number of seconds that the dispatcher waits before timing out.  Enter 0 to specify no timeout
Logging of Upfront Servers Status	true	Logs the status of Upfront servers.

## Event Server Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Server.Tuning.Event Server

Property	Default value	Description
Processes on Startup	1	The number of event server instances to load in memory on startup.
Maximum Processes	5	The maximum number of event server instances to load.
Server Threads	20	The maximum number of event server threads.

Property	Default value	Description
Polling Interval	65536	The time interval in milliseconds that the event server uses for polling.
Retry Interval	4096	The number of milliseconds to wait before retrying the last operation.
Maximum Retry Count	1	The number of retries before issuing an error.

### Upfront Server Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Server.Tuning.Upfront Server

Property	Default value	Description
Processes on Startup	2	The number of Upfront server instances to load into memory on startup.
Maximum processes	10	The maximum number of Upfront server instances to be loaded.
Server Process Life Span	60	The number of minutes that an Upfront server must be inactive before the server instance is stopped.
Server Threads	50	The maximum number of Upfront server threads.
Socket Read Timeout	60	The maximum number of seconds to wait for another IBM® Cognos® BI server to respond to a request initiated by Upfront.

### Web Interface Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Server.Web Interface

Property	Default value	Description
Disable Template Caching	false	Specifies whether templates are saved to disk for debugging purposes.
Debug Templates Directory	<i>installation_location</i> \upfront\DebugTemplateInfo	The directory where intermediate XML and XLS files are placed when Template Caching is disabled.
Error Page	errorpage.utml	The name of the default error page used by Upfront.
Security UI Style	Dynamic Tree	Determines whether the Security page uses a fully expanded user class tree or a dynamic user class tree.  To use an expanded user class tree, change this value to Expanded Tree.
Template Location	<i>installation_location</i> \templates	The location of the Upfront templates.
Web Content Path	<i>installation_location</i> \webcontent	The location of the Web content files.

## Shared

You can configure the following categories for Shared.

**Note:** Because Upfront is a shared component, Upfront.Shared can appear in Configuration Manager even when Upfront is not installed on the local computer.

## Data Store Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Shared.Data Store

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Host	The name of your computer	The name of the computer on which the Upfront data store is installed

Property	Default value	Description
Data Store Name	DataStore	The name of the Upfront data store
Data Store Port	8150	The port number used by the data store
Search Engine Host	The name of your computer	The name of the computer on which the Upfront search engine is installed
Search Engine Port	4455	The port number used by the Upfront search engine

## File Manager Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Shared.File Manager

Property	Default value	Description
Max File Size	10	The maximum file size allowed in megabytes.

## General Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Shared.General

Property	Default value	Description
Server Group Name	Upfront Server Group	The server group the gateway will connect to or the server group the server will run in.
File Manager Server Group Name	Upfront File Manager Server Group	

## Server Administration Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront.Shared.Server Administration

Property	Default value	Description
Administration Service Port	8031	The port used by the Upfront administration server.

---

# Chapter 23: Upfront File Manager Settings

---

Upfront File Manager allows you to distribute, secure, and manage static documents in Upfront. This includes, for example, documents created using applications such as Microsoft® Word or Excel.

## Important and Common Changes

You must apply the Upfront settings to update your environment with any changes.

## Gateway

You can configure the following categories for Gateway.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront File Manager.Gateway.General

Property	Default value	Description
File Manager Server Group Name	Upfront File Manager Server Group	Specifies which File Manager server group the gateway will connect to
File Manager Gateway Enabled	true	The File Manager gateway will communicate with the Upfront dispatcher when this parameter is enabled, otherwise an error is returned.

### Tuning Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront File Manager.Gateway.Tuning

Property	Default value	Description
Max File Size	10	The maximum file size allowed in megabytes.
Error Level	2	The error level used by default when writing to the Event Log.

## Server

You can configure the following categories for Server.

### Administration Connection Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront File Manager.Server.Administration Connection

Property	Default value	Description
Server Administration Port	8031	The port number used by the Upfront administration server.

### General Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront File Manager.Server.General

Property	Default value	Description
File Manager Server Group Name	Upfront File Manager Server Group	The server group the Upfront File Manager is associated with.
File Manager Server Enabled	true	The File Manager Server process will start when this parameter is enabled.
File Manager Storage Directory	<i>installation_location</i> \upfront\FMRootDirectory	The location where Upfront File Manager maintains the files.

## Tuning

You can configure the following categories for Tuning.

### Dispatcher Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront File Manager.Server.Tuning.Dispatcher

Property	Default value	Description
Error Level	2	The error level used by default when writing to the Event Log.
Dispatcher Max Thread Count	10	The maximum number of worker threads that the dispatcher can spawn.

Property	Default value	Description
Dispatcher Listen Timeout	5	The timeout value for the dispatcher in seconds. Zero means no timeout.

### File Manager Server Properties

Object hierarchy: Upfront File Manager.Server.Tuning.File Manager Server

Property	Default value	Description
Max Num of Versions	10	Specifies the maximum number of versions allowed for each NewsItem.
Max File Size	10	Specifies the maximum allowed size in MB for each file.
Processes on Startup	2	Specifies the number of upfront File Manager instances to load in memory.
Maximum Processes	10	The maximum number of upfront File Manager instances to be loaded.
Server Process Life Span	60	The number of minutes of inactivity before the Upfront server is stopped.
Server Threads	50	The maximum number of Upfront File Manager threads allowed.



---

# Chapter 24: IBM Cognos Web Services Settings

---

IBM® Cognos® Web Services is a toolkit you use to extend and customize IBM® Cognos® products as Web services. A Web service is an application that can communicate with other applications using Web protocols.

IBM Cognos Web Services gives you access to IBM Cognos business intelligence reporting data through an extensible markup language (XML) API. Using the XML interface, you can adapt and extend reporting products by adding features at any time. The XML API also makes it easy to integrate your IBM Cognos data with other Web applications and environments.

## Important and Common Changes

IBM® Cognos® Web Services installs a version of Apache Tomcat and configures IBM Cognos Web Services to use this application server by default. Alternatively, you can select to use an existing Apache Tomcat Server, BEA WebLogic, or IBM WebSphere as your application server.

### Install and Configure Apache Tomcat with IBM Cognos Web Services

Use the Configuration Manager wizard to install and configure the Apache Tomcat server. For more information, see the IBM Cognos Web Services *Installation Guide*.

If you do not use the Configuration Manager wizard, you must set properties in Configuration Manager to

- specify that you want to install Apache Tomcat ([p. 275](#))
- define the HTTP connector port ([p. 275](#))
- define the shutdown port ([p. 275](#))
- define the URL to the application server ([p. 291](#))
- specify the locations of your IBM® Cognos® product gateways ([p. 277](#))

Apply the IBM Cognos Web Services settings to update your environment with any changes.

### Configure an Existing Version of Apache Tomcat

If you want to use an existing Apache Tomcat server, run the Configuration Manager wizard to change the settings. For information about using the Configuration Manager wizard, see the IBM Cognos Web Services *Installation Guide*.

If you do not use the Configuration Manager wizard, you must set the following properties in Configuration Manager:

- specify that you do not want to install Apache Tomcat ([p. 275](#))
- specify the installation location of the existing Apache Tomcat server ([p. 275](#))
- specify the version of the existing Apache Tomcat server ([p. 275](#))

- define the URL to the application server ([p. 291](#))
- specify the locations of your IBM Cognos product gateways ([p. 277](#))
- add the IBM Cognos Web Services bin directory to the installation path (see the *Installation Guide*)

Apply the IBM Cognos Web Services settings to update your environment with any changes.

### Configure Another Application Server

If you want to use an IBM WebSphere or BEA WebLogic server, run the Configuration Manager wizard to change the settings. For information about using the Configuration Manager wizard, see the IBM Cognos Web Services *Installation Guide*.

If you do not use the Configuration Manager wizard, you must set the following properties in Configuration Manager:

- select the application server to configure ([p. 275](#))
- define the URL to the application server ([p. 291](#))
- specify the locations of your IBM Cognos product gateways ([p. 277](#))
- manually configure BEA WebLogic or IBM WebSphere for use with IBM Cognos Web Services

For more information, see the IBM Cognos Web Services *Installation Guide* and the application server product documentation.

Apply the IBM Cognos Web Services settings to update your environment with any changes.

### Configure IBM Cognos Portal Services

When installing IBM Cognos Web Services, IBM® Cognos® Portal Services components are installed by default. For IBM Cognos Portal Services configuration settings, see "[IBM Cognos Portal Services Settings](#) " ([p. 292](#)).

## Server Configuration File to Use With IBM Cognos Web Services

You only need to copy the server configuration file (*cern.csx*) if you have multiple server groups.

IBM® Cognos® Web Services uses the *cws.properties* file to store information about multiple server group configurations. IBM Cognos Web Services also picks up the configuration properties in the *cern.csx* file and uses them to obtain configuration information for server groups.

Use Configuration Manager to customize the configuration properties of your IBM® Cognos® Series 7 products. Then copy the *cern.csx* file from the IBM Cognos Series 7 *installation\_location/bin* directory to the IBM Cognos Web Services *installation\_location/bin* directory.

Then, open IBM Cognos Web Services Configuration, select the server group to configure, and enter the location of the *cern.csx* file. You must also enter the other server group properties and apply your configuration.

## Default Ports for IBM Cognos Web Services Components

IBM® Cognos® Web Services uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default port	Description
HTTP connector	8080	The port the Tomcat server uses to pass requests from the Web server to IBM Cognos Web Services.
Shutdown port	8081	The port the Tomcat server uses to listen for a shutdown command.
PowerPlay®	8010	The PowerPlay Enterprise Server dispatcher port.
NoticeCast	5020	The NoticeCast port.
Sun Java™ Directory Server	389	The Sun Java Directory Server port.

## Application Servers

You can configure the following categories for application servers.

### General Properties

Object Hierarchy:IBM Cognos Web Services.Application Servers.General

Property	Default value	Description
Select an application server to configure	Apache Tomcat	Lists the application servers that are automatically configured for IBM® Cognos® Web Services.

### Apache Tomcat Properties

Object Hierarchy:IBM Cognos Web Services.Application Servers.General.Apache Tomcat

Property	Default value	Description
Do you want to install Tomcat?	Yes	Indicates if you want to install the Tomcat server.  Set this property to No when using an existing Tomcat server.
Install location	<b>Windows</b> <i>installation_location/cws3/tomcat</i> <b>UNIX</b> <i>installation_location/cws3/tomcat</i>	The installation location of the Apache Tomcat server installed with IBM Cognos Web Services.
HTTP connector port	8080	The port the Tomcat server uses to pass requests from the Web server to IBM Cognos Web Services.  This property applies to the Tomcat server installed with IBM Cognos Web Services.
Shutdown port	8081	The port the Tomcat server uses to listen for a shutdown command.  This property applies to the Tomcat server installed with IBM Cognos Web Services.

### BEA WebLogic Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Application Servers.General.BEA WebLogic

Property	Default value	Description
WAR File Location	<i>installation_location/BEAWebLogic</i>	The location where the IBM Cognos Web Services .war files for BEA WebLogic are created.

Property	Default value	Description
Do you want to configure for XSLTC?	False	To use XSLTC with IBM Cognos Web Services and BEA WebLogic, set the value to True. You must also manually configure BEA WebLogic for XSLTC.

You must also manually configure BEA WebLogic for IBM Cognos Web Services. For more information, see the IBM Cognos Web Services *Installation Guide*.

For more information about configuring a BEA WebLogic server, see the BEA WebLogic documentation.

## IBM WebSphere Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Application Servers.General.IBM WebSphere

Property	Default value	Description
EAR File Location	<i>installation_location/</i> IBMWebSphere	The location where the .ear files for IBM WebSphere are created.

You must also manually configure IBM WebSphere for IBM Cognos Web Services. For more information, see the IBM Cognos Web Services *Installation Guide*.

For more information about configuring an IBM WebSphere server, see the IBM WebSphere documentation.

# Configuration

You can configure the following configuration categories.

## General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.General

Property	Default value	Description
IBM® Cognos® Web Services location	<i>installation_location</i>	The installation location for IBM Cognos Web Services.

Property	Default value	Description
Impromptu® Web Reports Gateway	<code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/imrap.cgi</code>	The URL to the default Impromptu Web Reports gateway. The path may also contain the domain name and the port for the gateway.
PowerPlay® Gateway	<code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe</code>	The URL to the default PowerPlay gateway. The path may also contain the domain name and the port for the gateway.
Upfront Gateway	<code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>	The URL to the default Upfront gateway. The path may also contain the domain name and the port for the gateway.  This property is also used by the Content Navigation Adapter.
Visualizer Gateway	<code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/vizcgi.exe</code>	The URL to the default Visualizer gateway. The path may also contain the domain name and the port for the gateway.
NoticeCast Server	<code>computer_name</code>	The name of the NoticeCast server computer.
NoticeCast Port	5020	The default port for NoticeCast.
NoticeCast Timeout	0	Specifies the timeout for the NoticeCast server in milliseconds. The default value, 0, specifies timeout is disabled.
PowerPlay 7.4 Host and Port	<code>computer_name:8010</code>	The computer name and port for the default PowerPlay 7.4 dispatcher.
PowerPlay 7.1 Host and Port	<code>computer_name:8010</code>	The computer name and port for the default PowerPlay 7.1 dispatcher.

Property	Default value	Description
PowerPlay 7.0 Host and Port	<i>computer_name</i> :8010	The computer name and port for the default PowerPlay 7.0 dispatcher.
BI Server Encoding	<b>Windows</b> Latin-1 <b>UNIX</b> ISO 8859-1	The default encoding for IBM® Cognos® components.
Crosstab Maximum Rows	1000	The maximum number of rows that will be returned in a PowerPlay crosstab.
Crosstab Maximum Columns	1000	The maximum number of columns that will be returned in a PowerPlay crosstab.
Crosstab Maximum Nesting Levels	6	The maximum number of nesting levels that will be returned in a PowerPlay crosstab.
Enable Web Server Authentication	No	To allow Integrated Windows® Authentication for IBM Cognos Web Services, set this value to True. You must also configure the Web server and servlet engine. For information, see the IBM Cognos Web Services <i>Installation Guide</i> .

## Logging Properties

You can configure the following logging properties.

### General Log Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Logging.General

Property	Default value	Description
Update Interval	60000	The number of milliseconds to wait before checking for updates to the log properties file.  <b>Note:</b> This does not apply to IBM and BEA Weblogic application servers.
Log file name	<i>installation_location</i> \cws3\bin\cwslogs\cwslog.log	The name of the log file produced.
Maximum Log File Size	5000KB	The maximum file size for the log files before backups are made.
Maximum Backup Index	3	The maximum number of log file backups to create.
Level	ERROR	The level of logging detail. Values are OFF (no details), FATAL, ERROR, WARN, INFO, DEBUG, and ALL (most detailed).
Log to stdout	No	Specifies whether to direct the logging information to the standard output (typically the console).
Log to files	Yes	Specifies whether to direct the logging information to the log files.  <b>Note:</b> This is not recommended for IBM and BEA Weblogic with clusters.

## Server Groups Properties

Each IBM Cognos product that you have installed requires you to set different property values. The following tables show the properties for Impromptu Web Reports, PowerPlay Enterprise Server, Visualizer, and Upfront and NoticeCast.

By default you can configure up to five server groups for each IBM Cognos server product. If you need to configure more, you must manually add them to the `cws.properties` file.

## IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports Server Group Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Server Groups.IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports

Property	Default value	Description
Enter the location of server configuration (.csx) file		<p>The full path, and the name of the <i>cern.csx</i> file on the local computer.</p> <p>This value is empty. The user must fill in the location.</p>
Server Group Name	IWR Server Group	The name of the target server group as defined in the <i>cern.csx</i> file.
CWS Server Group Name	IWR1	The name that IBM Cognos Web Services uses for the server group.
Web Server	<i>http://webserver_name</i>	<p>The path to the remote Web server gateway for this server group.</p> <p>For example, <i>http://host.domain:port</i></p> <p>This must be a fully qualified path and must include the domain and port, when applicable.</p>
Encoding	<b>Windows</b> Latin-1 <b>UNIX</b> ISO 8859-1	The character set that is used on the remote server.
Language	English	The language of the remote computer that you are connecting to.

Property	Default value	Description
Upfront Adapter	CWSUPF	The adapter version being used by the current Impromptu Web Reports installation.  You must configure the corresponding Upfront server group.
Upfront Server Group	UPF1	The Upfront server that Impromptu Web Reports uses.  The name must match the CWS Server Group property in the Upfront server group.
Do you want to configure this server group?	No	The configuration property values are not set until you change this value to Yes.

### IBM Cognos NoticeCast Server Group Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Server Groups.IBM Cognos NoticeCast

Property	Default value	Description
Enter the location of server configuration (.csx) file	none	The full path, and the name of the <i>cern.csx</i> file on the local computer.  This value is empty. The user must fill in the location.
Server Group Name	NoticeCast Server Group	The name of the target server group as defined in the <i>cern.csx</i> file.
CWS Server Group Name	NC1	The name that IBM Cognos Web Services uses for the server group.

Property	Default value	Description
Web Server	<code>http://webserver_name</code>	<p>The path to the remote Web server gateway for this server group.</p> <p>For example, <code>http://host.domain:port</code></p> <p>This must be a fully qualified path and must include the domain and port, when applicable.</p>
Encoding	<b>Windows</b> Latin-1 <b>UNIX</b> ISO 8859-1	The character set that is used on the remote server.
Language	English	The language of the remote computer that you are connecting to.
Port	5020	The default port for the NoticeCast server group.
Timeout	0	Specifies the timeout for the NoticeCast server in milliseconds. The default value, 0, specifies timeout is disabled.
Upfront Adapter	CWSUPF	<p>The adapter version being used by the current IBM® Cognos® NoticeCast installation.</p> <p>You must configure the corresponding Upfront server group.</p>
Upfront Server Group	UPF1	<p>The Upfront server that Impromptu Web Reports uses.</p> <p>The name must match the CWS Server Group property in the Upfront server group.</p>

Property	Default value	Description
Do you want to configure this server group?	No	The configuration property values are not set until you change this value to Yes.

### IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server Group Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Server Groups.IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server

Property	Default value	Description
Enter the location of server configuration (.csx) file	none	<p>The full path, and the name of the <i>cern.csx</i> file on the local computer.</p> <p>This value is empty. The user must fill in the location.</p>
Server Group Name	PPES Server Group	The name of the target server group as defined in the <i>cern.csx</i> file.
CWS Server Group Name	PPW1	The name that IBM Cognos Web Services uses for the server group.
Gateway	http://localhost/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe	<p>This is the location of the remote gateway that you are connecting to.</p> <p>For example, <i>http://remote-host/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdccgi.exe</i></p> <p>This must be a fully qualified gateway path.</p>
Encoding	<b>Windows</b> Latin-1 <b>UNIX</b> ISO 8859-1	The character set that is used on the remote server.
Do you want to configure this server group?	No	The configuration property values are not set until you change this value to Yes.

## IBM Cognos Visualizer Server Group Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Server Groups.IBM Cognos Visualizer

Property	Default value	Description
Enter the location of server configuration (.csx) file	none	<p>The full path, and the name of the <i>cern.csx</i> file on the local computer.</p> <p>This value is empty. The user must fill in the location.</p>
Server Group Name	Visualizer Server Group	The name of the target server group as defined in the <i>cern.csx</i> file.
CWS Server Group Name	VIZ1	The name that IBM Cognos Web Services uses for the server group.
Gateway	http://localhost/cognos/cgi-bin/vizcgi.exe	<p>The path to the remote Web server gateway for this server group.</p> <p>For example, http://host.domain:port</p> <p>This must be a fully qualified path and must include the domain and port, when applicable.</p>
Encoding	<b>Windows</b> Latin-1 <b>UNIX</b> ISO 8859-1	The character set that is used on the remote server.
Do you want to configure this server group?	No	The configuration property values are not set until you change this value to Yes.

## Upfront Server Group Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Server Groups.Upfront

Property	Default value	Description
Enter the location of server configuration (.csx) file	none	<p>The full path, and the name of the <i>cern.csx</i> file on the local computer.</p> <p>This value is empty. The user must fill in the location.</p>
Server Group Name	Upfront Server Group	The name of the target server group as defined in the <i>cern.csx</i> file.
CWS Server Group Name	UPF1	<p>The name that IBM Cognos Web Services uses for the server group.</p> <p>If you use an Impromptu Web Reports server group, use this name for the Upfront Server Group property.</p>
Web Server	<i>http://webserver_name</i>	<p>The path to the remote Web server gateway for this server group.</p> <p>For example, <i>http://host.domain:port</i></p> <p>This must be a fully qualified path and must include the domain and port, when applicable.</p>
Encoding	<b>Windows</b> Latin-1 <b>UNIX</b> ISO 8859-1	The character set that is used on the remote server.
Do you want to configure this server group?	No	The configuration property values are not set until you change this value to Yes.

## Tuning Properties

You can configure the following tuning properties.

## Access Manager Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Tuning.Access Manager

Property	Default value	Description
Number of Processes	1	The number of Access Manager listener processes.
Processor Host	<i>computer_name</i>	The computer name of the Access Manager listener.
Backlog	100	The number of simultaneous connections to the Access Manager listener.
Fetch Size	all	Specifies the number of user classes to retrieve.
Access Manager Cache Maximum Entries	1000	Specifies the maximum number of entries in allowed in the Access Manager cache. To disable the cache, set the value to 0.
Access Manager Cache Maximum Size	67108864	Specifies the maximum size in bytes of the Access Manager cache.
Access Manager Cache Size Check Interval	60	Specifies how often in minutes to check the size of the Access Manager cache.
Access Manager Cache Load Wait Time	60000	Specifies the maximum amount of time in milliseconds to wait for an individual cache entry to be loaded.

## Content Navigation Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Tuning.Content Navigation

Property	Default value	Description
Describe Mode	Default	The mode used to override the user describe mode.  This can be Admin, Consumer, Default, Drill.
Page Size	-1	The default page size for search results.  Use -1 for all pages.
Upfront 7.4 Enabled	Yes	Specifies if the Upfront server you are using is version 7.4 or higher.
Common Picture URL Enabled	Yes	Indicates if you want to use the new Upfront 7.4 location for icons and images.

### General Properties

Object Hierarchy:IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Tuning.General

Property	Default value	Description
Stylesheet caching	true	By default, stylesheets are cached in memory the first time they are used.  To use stylesheet caching, set this value to true. If caching is turned off, IBM Cognos Web Services must reload the stylesheets each time they are used.

### Impromptu Web Reports Properties

Object Hierarchy:IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Tuning.Impromptu Web Reports

Property	Default value	Description
Language	English	The language that Impromptu Web Reports is using. This property is required when using the Impromptu Web Reports adapter for the Series 7 release, CWSIWR.

## PowerPlay Properties

You can configure the following properties for the PowerPlay PPW and PPWA adapters.

### CWSPPW Properties

Object Hierarchy:IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Tuning. PowerPlay.CWSPPW

Property	Default value	Description
Enabled	No	The PowerPlay adapter is not enabled until you set this value to Yes.
Default PPES version	7.4	

### PPES 7.x Properties

You can configure the following properties for the PowerPlay PPW adapter. If you are using more than one version of PowerPlay, you must configure each version separately.

Object Hierarchy:IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Tuning. PowerPlay.CWSPPW.PPES 7.x

Property	Default value	Description
Number of Processes	4	The number of PowerPlay listener processes.
Processor Host	<i>computer_name</i>	The computer name of the PowerPlay listener.
Request timeout	180000	The number of milliseconds to wait for the PowerPlay listener to respond before IBM Cognos Web Services responds with a time out.

Property	Default value	Description
Ping timeout	60000	The number of milliseconds to wait when determining if a PowerPlay listener is still listening.
Ping interval	120000	The number of milliseconds between each attempt to see if a PowerPlay listener is still listening.
Backlog	100	The number of simultaneous connections to a PowerPlay listener.
Enabled	No	Specifies if this PowerPlay adapter is enabled

### CWSPWA Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Web Services.Configuration.Tuning.PowerPlay.CWSPWA

Property	Default value	Description
Cache entries	1000	The maximum number of cached requests and responses (paired) for the PowerPlay Series 7 Version 2 adapter.
Cache size	67108864	The maximum cache size in bytes for the PowerPlay Series 7 Version 2 adapter.
Cache size interval	60	The number of minutes between checks on the cache size for the PowerPlay Series 7 Version 2 adapter.
Cache data interval	60	The number of minutes between checks on the cache data for the PowerPlay Series 7 Version 2 adapter.

# IBM Cognos Web Services Servlet Engine

You can configure the following properties for the IBM® Cognos® Web Services servlet engine (Advanced property view).

## General Properties

Object Hierarchy:IBM Cognos Web Services.CWS Servlet Engine.General

Property	Default value	Description
Java™ Virtual Machine	Hotspot	The virtual machine type. Values are Hotspot, Server, and Classic. Use the default if you are running server applications which require peak operating speed.
JVM Memory Settings	-Xmx256m -XX:MaxNewSize=128m -XX:NewSize=64m	The JVM memory allocation parameters used by the Tomcat server.
Standard Out File	<i>installation_location</i> \tomcat\logs\stdout.log	Location of the standard out file.
Standard Error File	<i>installation_location</i> \tomcat\logs\stderr.log	Location of the standard error file.

## Developer Shortcuts

You can configure the following properties for developer shortcuts.

## General Properties

Object Hierarchy:IBM Cognos Web Services.Developer Shortcuts.General

Property	Default value	Description
Add shortcuts to the desktop	Yes	Specifies whether to create a shortcut on the Windows® desktop for the IBM® Cognos® Web Services Welcome page.

Property	Default value	Description
Add shortcuts to the Programs folder under the Start Menu	Yes	Specifies whether to create a shortcut in the Windows Programs folder for the IBM Cognos Web Services Welcome page.
URL to Application Server	<code>http://computer_name:8080</code>	The URL to an application server. You must include any relevant domain names or ports.

## IBM Cognos Portal Services Settings

You can configure the following categories for IBM® Cognos® Portal Services configuration.

### General Properties

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Portal Services.Configuration.General

Property	Default value	Description
Application Server Base URL	<code>http://computer_name:8080</code>	Base URL for all IBM® Cognos® Web Services access.
Web Content URL	<code>http://computer_name:8080/cws</code>	<p>Location of IBM Cognos Portal Services image files that appear in the user interface of some portlets.</p> <p>The default value is set dynamically if you use a default Tomcat installation. If you use another application server, this value must be set to the correct location.</p>
SDK URL	<code>http://computer_name:8080/xts/cws</code>	The IBM Cognos Web Services URL.

Property	Default value	Description
Location of 'applications.xml'	/cws/cps/applications.xml	<p>The location of the IBM Cognos Web Services Application Definition file.</p> <p>To remotely access the file, use a URL path, starting with "http://". To point to a file in the server environment, use a path that is relative to <i>installation_location/cws/</i> templates.</p>
Authentication Method	Anonymous Logon	<p>Determines how portal users are authenticated against the IBM® Cognos® Series 7 server. This value applies to all portal users using the IBM® Cognos® portlets.</p> <p>There are four options.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Anonymous Logon</li> <li>• Guest</li> <li>• Logon As</li> <li>• Single Sign-On</li> </ul> <p>For more information about authenticating portal users and restricting access to sensitive information, see the IBM Cognos Portal Services <i>Administration Guide</i>.</p>
Namespace ID		<p>Specifies the name of the Access Manager namespace to use when selecting Logon As or Single Sign-On as authentication methods. If you are only using the default namespace, this value may be left blank.</p>

Property	Default value	Description
Username		<p>Specifies the valid user ID that is used with the Logon As authentication method.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The username and password are saved in text format on the IBM Cognos Web Services server, which should be used with care in secure environments.</p>
Password		<p>Valid password that is used with the Logon As authentication method.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The username and password are saved in text format on the IBM Cognos Web Services server, which should be used with care in secure environments.</p>
Content Service	interface://cs7	<p>Indicates that IBM Cognos Portal Services will access IBM Cognos Series 7. We recommend that you do not change this value.</p>
Convert gateway URL to absolute path	False	<p>Converts Upfront's NewsItems URL into absolute URLs for IBM Cognos Series 7.</p>
Redirect URL	http://cognos/upfront/common/redirect.html	<p>Indicates the location of the redirection file. For more information, see the IBM Cognos Portal Services <i>Administration Guide</i>.</p>
Cancel URL	http://cognos/upfront/common/cancel.html	<p>Specifies the URL to the IBM Cognos Portal Services cancel page.</p>

---

# Chapter 25: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Settings

---

IBM® Cognos® Metrics Manager is a Web application for managing business metrics by monitoring, analyzing, and reporting them at all levels of the organization.

## Mandatory Changes

You must choose a database where the IBM® Cognos® Metrics Manager data store will be located, create the data store, and then change other settings accordingly. Also, you must provide information about the administrator logon for IBM® Cognos® security. To configure IBM Cognos Metrics Manager:

- ☐ provide information about the IBM DB2 data store

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.IBM DB2 Data Store

- ☐ provide information about the Microsoft® SQL Server data store

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.Microsoft SQL Server Data Store

- ☐ provide information about the Oracle data store

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.Oracle Data Store ([p. 177](#))

- ☐ provide information about the administrator logon:

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager General ([p. 299](#))

- ☐ apply the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager settings in Windows® ([p. 27](#)).

## Default Ports for IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Components

IBM® Cognos® Metrics Manager uses the following ports by default.

Component	Default port
Sun Java™ System Directory Server	389
• Server	A randomly generated number
• Administration	
Access Manager Server ticket service	9010
Access Manager Server authentication service	8070

Component	Default port
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager application server HTTP port	21010
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager application server secure HTTPS port	21011
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager application server shutdown port	21012
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager application server AJP port	21013
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager application server WARP port	21014

## Settings to Change for a Distributed Installation

The following table contains some of the more common components that you may want to install on separate computers. Associated with each component is the place in the object hierarchy where you should modify the location of each category, if required.

Component	Object hierarchy location
IBM® Cognos® Metrics Manager Application	IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.Gateway.General.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Host
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Gateway	IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager General.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Gateway URI
Directory server	Services.Access Manager - Directory Server.General.Computer Services.Access Manager - Runtime.Authentication Source.Directory Server.Computer
Access Manager Server	Services.Access Manager - Server.General

Component	Object hierarchy location
Access Manager gateway	<b>Command Line Interface</b>
	IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.accman.AccManAdmin.gateway
	By default, the gateway is /cognos/cgi-bin/accessadmin.cgi
	IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.accman.AccManLogon.gateway
	By default, the gateway is /cognos/cgi-bin/login.cgi
	<b>Graphical User Interface</b>
	Not applicable.

## IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server

You can configure the following categories for IBM® Cognos® Metrics Manager Application Server.

### Apache Tomcat Server Configuration

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.Apache Tomcat Server

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Install Location (Read-Only)	<b>Windows</b>	The location of IBM Cognos Metric Manager installation.
	<i>installation_location\cognos\cmm2</i>	
	<b>UNIX</b>	
	<i>/usr/cognos/cmm2</i>	
HTTP Connections Port	21010	The port to connect to the Tomcat application server.

Property	Default value	Description
Verbose Logging	off	Specifies whether to log debugging information about the request headers and cookies that were received, and the response headers and cookies that were sent, for all requests received by this instance of the Web server.
Secure HTTPS Port	21011	The secure port number of the Tomcat application server.
Shutdown Port	21012	The shutdown port number of the Tomcat application server.
AJP Port	21013	The AJP port number of the Tomcat application server, used with the IIS redirector.
WARP Port	21014	The Warp port number of the Tomcat application server.
Connection Time Out	60000	The amount of time in seconds before the Tomcat connection is closed. To disable timeout, set this to value to -1
Enable DNS Lookups	false	<p>By default, DNS lookups are enabled when a Web application calls request.getRemoteHost()</p> <p>Enabling lookups can have an adverse impact on performance. To disable lookups, set this value to false. When DNS lookups are disabled, request.getRemoteHost() will return the String version of the IP address of the remote client.</p>
Enable an SSL HTTP/1.1 Tomcat Connector	no	Enables SSL HTTP/1.1 Tomcat Connector.

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server Base Directory	<b>Windows</b> <i>installation_location\cognos\cmm2\webapps</i> <b>UNIX</b> <i>/usr/cognos/cmm2/webapps</i>	The location of the directory containing applications served by the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager application server.
Maximum Java™ Heap Size (M bytes)	512	Specifies the amount of memory available to the Java Virtual Machine on startup.

## IBM Cognos Metrics Manager General

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager General

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Gateway URI	<i>http://computer_name/cmm/cgi-bin/cognos.cgi</i>	<p>The gateway URI for IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.</p> <p>To use the alternate ISAPI gateway, change the value to <i>http://computer_name/cmm/cgi-bin/cognosisapi.dll</i></p>
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Web Content URI	<i>http://computer_name/cmm</i>	The IBM Cognos Metrics Manager web address for documentation and images.
Data Store Type	SQL Server	Specifies the type of IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store. You must complete additional configuration for the specified data store. For example, if you select Oracle, configure the properties in IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.Oracle Data Store
IBM® Cognos® Enterprise Rendition Name	<i>cern</i>	The rendition of the IBM Cognos software containing the Access Manager dlls.

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos Enterprise Rendition Install Location	<b>Windows</b> <i>installation_location</i> \cognos\cern\bin	The location of the Cognos folder containing Access Manager dlls.
IBM Cognos Enterprise Rendition Encoding Setting	iso-8859-1	The encoding used by Access Manager and PowerPlay® Enterprise Server when loading a cube.
IBM® Cognos® Web Services Adapter URI Path	PPW	The IBM Cognos Web Services adapter used for communication between IBM Cognos Metrics Manager and PowerPlay Enterprise Server. Use PPW with IBM Cognos Metrics Manager 1.1. PPWA is recommended with IBM Cognos Metrics Manager 2.0 and 2.1.
IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Access Manager URL	http://server_name/cognos/cgi-bin/login.cgi	<p>The Access Manager CGI program must be in the same domain as IBM Cognos Metrics Manager. For example, if IBM Cognos Metrics Manager is on <a href="http://cmm.cognos.com:8080/">http://cmm.cognos.com:8080/</a> etc</p> <p>then Access Manager can be on <a href="http://cmm.cognos.com/cognos/cgi-bin/login.cgi">http://cmm.cognos.com/cognos/cgi-bin/login.cgi</a></p> <p>or</p> <p><a href="http://auth.cognos.com/cognos/cgi-bin/login.cgi">http://auth.cognos.com/cognos/cgi-bin/login.cgi</a></p> <p><b>Note:</b> The protocol must also be specified (http or https).</p>
IBM Cognos Series 7 Administrator Logon ID	Administrator	The logon ID for the Access Manager administrator.
IBM Cognos Series 7 Administrator Password		The logon password of the default namespace's Access Manager administrator.

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Administration User Class	Root User Class	Specifies the top level user class recognized by IBM Cognos Metrics Manager. Users belonging to this class have administration rights in IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Developer User Class	Developer	Specifies the developer level user class recognized by IBM Cognos Metrics Manager. Users belonging to this class have restricted administration rights to scorecards and metrics in IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager PPXO Data File Location	<b>Windows</b> <i>installation_location\cognos\cmm2\data\cube</i> <b>UNIX</b> <i>/usr/cognos/cmm2/data/cube</i>	The location of the ppxo.cmv file that contains the cube data. IBM Cognos Metrics Manager generates this file when it loads from cubes.
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Bulk Loader Input File Version Number	2	The version number for the format of the flat files used in the bulk loader process. Change the value to 1 to load IBM Cognos Metrics Manager version 1.0 or 1.1 files.
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Administration Posted Variables Output File	<b>Windows</b> <i>installation_location\cognos\cmm2\webapps</i> <b>UNIX</b> <i>/usr/cognos/cmm2/webapps</i>	The location of the output file listing variables that have been posted by the Metrics Manager administration tool.
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Export Path	<i>installation_location\cognos\cmm2\data\export</i>	The location of the file containing the data exported from the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager database.

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Export File Name	export	The file containing the data exported from the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager database.
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Export All Parameter String	all	The string or keyword to be used that indicates all available options should be included in the export of data.
SSL Protocol Handler	Windows com.sun.net.ssl.internal.www.protocol	Java™ classpath of the SSL protocol handler to use when IBM Cognos Metrics Manager communicates with other services.
SSL Truststore File		The file which contains the SSL certificates which IBM Cognos Metrics Manager trusts.
SSL Truststore Password		The password to use in order to access the contents of the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager truststore.
SSL Debug Setting		The value of the Java system property javax.net.debug.
Enable Publish to IBM® Cognos® Upfront	false	This enables publishing the Watch list and accountability scorecards to Upfront from IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.
IBM Cognos Upfront URI	http://server_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe	The URL for access to Upfront.
Enable IBM® Cognos® NoticeCast Alerts	false	This enables IBM Cognos NoticeCast alerts in IBM Cognos Metrics Manager
Alert Queue Processing Interval	30	The alert queue will be processed at this interval (minutes).
IBM Cognos NoticeCast Host Server	localhost	The name of the IBM Cognos NoticeCast server.

Property	Default value	Description
IBM Cognos NoticeCast Host Port	5020	The name of the IBM Cognos NoticeCast host port.
IBM Cognos NoticeCast User Logon ID	Administrator	User name to log on to the IBM Cognos NoticeCast dispatcher.
IBM Cognos NoticeCast User Password		Password to log on to the IBM Cognos NoticeCast dispatcher.
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Print Server Gateway URI	<code>http://computer_name/cmm/cgi-bin/cognos.cgi</code>	The gateway/context URI for IBM Cognos Metrics Manager print server. If it is not set, it defaults to the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Context URI.
Application Server Target Java Runtime Environment	1.6	The target application server JRE version.
Maximum Java Heap Size (M bytes)		Specifies the maximum amount memory available to the load options. If system resources are available, increasing this value may improve the performance of IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.
Generate Deployment WAR File	false	Optionally generate WAR file for deployment to other application servers.

## IBM DB2 Server Data Store Configuration

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.IBM DB2 Data Store

Property	Default value	Description
Database Alias	cmm	The name or the alias name of the DB2 Server database used by IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.

Property	Default value	Description
Database Logon ID	jdbcuser	The user ID used to access the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager database.
Database Logon Password	jdbcuser	The password associated with the user ID used to access the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store.
Minimum Database Connections	10	The minimum number of connections to maintain for the database.
Maximum Database Connections	200	The maximum number of connections to allow for the database.
Import File Code Page	819	<p>The DB2 code page number of the import files that are loaded into the staging tables.</p> <p>Change the number to match the code page you want to support. For example, when loading multilingual data a user may want to use UTF-8 encoding for data in the import files (*.cmo). In this case, change the code page to 1208.</p>

## Logging Properties

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.Logging

Property	Default value	Description
Logging level	ERROR	The level of detail to log, FATAL_ERROR (least detail), ERROR, WARN, INFO, and DEBUG (most detail).
Log Files Location	/WEB-INF/logs/	The location of the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager log files.

## Microsoft SQL Server Data Store Configuration

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.Microsoft® SQL Server Data Store

Property	Default value	Description
Database Name	cmm	The name of the Microsoft SQL Server database used for the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store.
Database Host	The name of your computer	The name of the computer hosting the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store.
Database Instance Name		The name of the named SQL Server instance that contains the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store.
Database Port	1433	The database port number of the computer hosting the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager database.
Database Logon ID	jdbcuser	The user name for the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store.
Database Logon Password	jdbcuser	The password for the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store.
Minimum Database Connections	10	The minimum number of connections to maintain for the database.
Maximum Database Connections	200	The maximum number of connections to allow for the database.
Import File Collation Name	SQL_Latin1_General_CP1_CI_AS	The collation name of the import files that are loaded into the staging tables.

## Oracle Data Store Configuration

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Server.Oracle Data Store

Property	Default value	Description
Database SID	cmm	Database unique identifier.
Database TNS Name	cmm	Database TNS name.
Database Host	The name of the Oracle database host computer	The name of the computer hosting the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store.
Database Port	1521	The database port number of the computer hosting the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store.
Database Logon ID	jdbcbuser	The user name for the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store.
Database Logon Password	jdbcbuser	The password for the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store.
Minimum Database Connections	10	The minimum number of connections to maintain for the database.
Maximum Database Connections	200	The maximum number of connections to allow for the database.
Import File Character Set	System Default Character Set	The character set name of the import files that are loaded into the staging tables.

## IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Gateway

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Metrics Manager.Gateway.General

Property	Default value	Description
IBM® Cognos® Metrics Manager Application Host	localhost	The name of the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager application computer. Change this value if the IBM Cognos Metrics Manager application is on a different computer.
IBM Cognos Metrics Manager Application Port	21010	The IBM Cognos Metrics Manager application port number.



---

# Chapter 26: IBM Cognos Server Group Settings

---

To view server settings using the graphical user interface, click the **Server Configuration** tab at the bottom of the Explorer window. For more information, see ["Create a Server Group" \(p. 32\)](#).

To view server settings using the command line interface, navigate to IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration, then choose a component. For more information, see ["The Command Line Interface" \(p. 39\)](#).

In the command line interface, when you use the Apply command ([p. 47](#)) on IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration, a server configuration file (cern.csx) file is created. This provides you with default server groups ([p. 16](#)).

If you have enabled SSL on your web server, you must change the values of the shared runtime gateways for each component.

## Access Manager Logon Server Group

### Graphical User Interface

When you click **AccManLogon** in the Explorer window, you can configure the following properties.

Property	Default value
Server Group Name	AccManLogon
Application	Access Manager
Gateway URL	<code>http://your_computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/login.exe</code>

### Command Line Interface

You can use the command line interface to configure the following categories for Access Manager Logon.

#### AccManLogon

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.Access Manager.AccManLogon

Property	Default value	Description
name	AccManLogon	The name of the Access Manager Logon server group.  You can create and name additional server groups.
gateway	<code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/login.exe</code>	Access Manager Logon gateway URL  If you have enabled SSL on your web server, change the value of the URL to include HTTPS instead of HTTP, or use a relative URL.

## Access Manager Administration Server Group

### Graphical User Interface

When you click **AccManAdmin** in the Explorer window, you can configure the following properties.

Property	Default value
Server Group Name	AccManAdmin
Application	Access Manager
Gateway URL	<code>http://your_computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/accessadmin.exe</code>

### Command Line Interface

You can use the command line interface to configure the following categories for Access Manager Administration.

#### AccManLogon

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.Access Manager.AccManAdmin

Property	Default value	Description
name	AccManLogon	The name of the Access Manager Administration server group.  You can create and name additional server groups.

Property	Default value	Description
gateway	<code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/accessadmin.exe</code>	Access Manager Administration gateway URL  If you have enabled SSL on your web server, change the value of the URL to include HTTPS instead of HTTP, or use a relative URL.

## Upfront Server Group

### Graphical User Interface

When you click **Upfront Server Group** in the Explorer window, you can configure the following properties.

Property	Default value
Server Group Name	Upfront Server Group
Application	Upfront
Gateway URL	<code>http://your_computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>
Dispatcher Name	The name of your computer
Port	8030
Protocol	Cogx2

### Command Line Interface

You can use the command line interface to configure the following categories for Upfront servers.

#### Upfront Server Group

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.upfront.Upfront Server Group

Property	Default value	Description
name	Upfront Server Group	The name of the Upfront server group.  You can create and name additional server groups.

Property	Default value	Description
gateway	<code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>	Upfront gateway URL  If you have enabled SSL on your web server, change the value of the URL to include HTTPS instead of HTTP, or use a relative URL.

### computer name

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.upfront.Upfront Server Group.computer name

Property	Default value	Description
Name	The name of your computer	The name of the computer that is an Upfront server
Port	8030	The Upfront inter-server communications port

## Upfront File Manager Server Group

### Graphical User Interface

When you click **Upfront File Manager Server Group** in the Explorer window, you can configure the following properties.

Property	Default value
Server Group Name	Upfront File Manager Server Group
Application	Upfront File Manager
Gateway URL	<code>http://your_computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/fmcgi.exe</code>
Dispatcher Name	The name of your computer
Port	8030
Protocol	Cogx2

## Command Line Interface

You can use the command line interface to configure the following categories for Upfront File Manager servers.

### Upfront File Manager Server Group

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.Upfront File Manager

Property	Default value	Description
name	Upfront File Manager Server Group	The name of the Upfront File Manager server group.  You can create and name additional server groups.
gateway	<i>http://computer name/cognos/cgi-bin/fmcgi.exe</i>	Upfront File Manager gateway URL  If you have enabled SSL on your web server, change the value of the URL to include HTTPS instead of HTTP, or use a relative URL.

### computer name

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.Upfront File Manager

Property	Default value	Description
Name	The name of your computer	The name of the computer that is an Upfront server
Port	8030	The Upfront inter-server communications port

## Impromptu Web Reports Server Group

### Graphical User Interface

When you click **IWR Server Group** in the Explorer window, you can configure the following properties.

Property	Default value
Server Group Name	IWR Server Group

Property	Default value
Application	IBM Cognos Impromptu® Web Reports
Gateway URL	<code>http://your_computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/imrap.cgi</code>
Dispatcher Name	The name of your computer
Port	8020
Protocol	Cogx2

## Command Line Interface

You can use the command line interface to configure the following categories for Impromptu Web Report servers.

### IWR Server Group

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.IWR Server Group

Property	Default value	Description
name	IWR Server Group	<p>The name of the Impromptu Web Reports Server group.</p> <p>You can create and name additional server groups.</p>
gateway	<code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/imrap.cgi</code>	<p>The Impromptu Web Reports gateway URL</p> <p>If you have enabled SSL on your web server, change the value of the URL to include HTTPS instead of HTTP, or use a relative URL.</p>

### computer name

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.iwr.IWR Server Group.computer name

Property	Default value	Description
Name	The name of your computer	The name of the computer that is an Impromptu Web Reports server

Property	Default value	Description
Port	8020	The Impromptu Web Reports inter-server communications port

## Specify Weighting Factors for Distributing Requests Across Servers

Requests can be distributed randomly across servers, or you can assign weighting factors to servers to distribute requests based on server power and capacity. This optimizes request processing. The weights of each server are relative, and the combination of the weights determines how the load is distributed. For example, if you assign a value of 5 to Server 1, a value of 5 to Server 2, and a value of 10 to Server 3, the combination of these weights is 20, and Server 1 will receive 5 out of 20 or 25% of the requests.

By default, the weighting type is Random and, if you select Weighted, the default weight for a server is 10.

The CGI gateway stores runtime load balancing data in a file called iwrlb.dat in the cern/cgi-bin directory on the web server. The user account running the web server must have write access to the cern/cgi-bin/iwrlb.dat file. This requirement only applies to the GCI gateway. The Apachemod, NSAPI, and ISAPI in-process gateways do not use the iwrlb.dat file.

### Load Balance Algorithm

Object Hierarchy: IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports.Gateway.General

Property	Default value	Description
Load Balance Algorithm	random	The type of distribution of requests to servers  Values: random or weighted

### Load Balance Weight

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.iwr.IWR Server Group.computer name

Property	Default value	Description
Weight	10	The relative weight assigned to the server

### Steps

1. In Configuration Manager, from the **View** menu, select **Advanced**.
2. In the **Explorer** box, click the **Components** tab, and navigate to **IBM Cognos Impromptu Web Reports, Gateway, General**.

3. In the **General - Properties** box, click **Random**, and from the drop-down list that appears, select **Weighted**.
4. In the **Explorer** box, click the **Server Configuration** tab, expand **All Server Groups**, and click **IWR Server Group**.
5. In the **IWR Server Group** box, click the number in the **Weight** column for a server. Type your desired weighting factor.
6. From the **Actions** menu, click **Apply Topology**.

## NoticeCast Server Group

### Graphical User Interface

When you click **NoticeCast Server Group** in the Explorer window, you can configure the following properties.

Property	Default value
Server Group Name	NoticeCast Server Group
Application	IBM Cognos NoticeCast
Gateway URL	<code>http://your_computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>
Dispatcher Name	The name of your computer
Port	5020
Protocol	Cogx2

### Command Line Interface

You can use the command line interface to configure the following categories for NoticeCast servers.

#### NoticeCast Server Group

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Server Group

Property	Default value	Description
name	NoticeCast Server Group	The name of the NoticeCast server group for PowerPlay.

Property	Default value	Description
gateway	<code>http://computer name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>	The Upfront gateway URL  If you have enabled SSL on your web server, change the value of the URL to include HTTPS instead of HTTP, or use a relative URL.

**computer name**

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos NoticeCast.NoticeCast Server Group.computer name

Property	Default value	Description
Name	The name of your computer	The name of the computer that is a NoticeCast server for PowerPlay.
Port	5020	The CogX inter-server communications port
Protocol	Cogx2	The inter-server protocol

**Notification Server Group**

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.Notification.Notification Server Group

Property	Default value	Description
name	Notification Server Group	The name of the NoticeCast server group for Upfront and IWR.
gateway	<code>http://computer name/cognos/cgi-bin/upfcgi.exe</code>	The Upfront gateway URL  If you have enabled SSL on your web server, change the value of the URL to include HTTPS instead of HTTP, or use a relative URL.

**computer name**

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.Notification.Notification Server Group.computer name

Property	Default value	Description
Name	The name of your computer	The name of the computer that is a NoticeCast server for Upfront and IWR.
Port	5020	The CogX inter-server communications port
Protocol	Cogx2	The inter-server protocol

## PowerPlay Enterprise Server Group

### Graphical User Interface

When you click **PPES Server Group** in the Explorer window, you can configure the following properties.

Property	Default value
Server Group Name	PPES Server Group
Application	IBM Cognos PowerPlay® Enterprise Server
Gateway URL	<i>http://your_computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe</i>
Web Server	<i>http://your_computer_name</i>
Dispatcher Name	The name of your computer
Port	8010
Protocol	Cogx2

### Command Line Interface

You can use the command line interface to configure the following categories for PowerPlay Enterprise Servers.

#### PPES Server Group

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos PowerPlay Enterprise Server.PPES Server Group

Property	Default value	Description
name	PPES Server Group	The name of the PowerPlay Enterprise Server server group.  You can create and name additional server groups.
gateway	<code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/ppdscgi.exe</code>	The PowerPlay Enterprise Server gateway URL  If you have enabled SSL on your web server, change the value of the URL to include HTTPS instead of HTTP, or use a relative URL.
Web server	<code>http://computer_name</code>	The Web server used by PowerPlay Enterprise Server.

### computer name

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.ppes.PPES Server Group.computer name

Property	Default value	Description
Name	The name of your computer	The name of the computer that is a PPES server
Port	8010	The PPES inter-server communications port

## IBM Cognos Visualizer Server Group

### Graphical User Interface

When you click **Visualizer Server Group** in the Explorer window, you can configure the following properties.

Property	Default value
Server Group Name	Visualizer Server Group
Application	IBM Cognos Visualizer
Gateway URL	<code>http://your_computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/vizcgi.exe</code>

Property	Default value
Web Server	<code>http://computer_name</code>
Dispatcher Name	The name of your computer
Port	8060
Protocol	Cogx2

## Command Line Interface

You can use the command line interface to configure the following categories for IBM® Cognos® Visualizer servers.

### IBM Cognos Visualizer Server Group

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos Visualizer.Visualizer Server Group

Property	Default value	Description
name	Visualizer Server Group	<p>The name of the IBM Cognos Visualizer server group.</p> <p>You can create and name additional server groups.</p>
gateway	<code>http://computer_name/cognos/cgi-bin/vizcgi.exe</code>	<p>The IBM Cognos Visualizer gateway URL.</p> <p>If you have enabled SSL on your web server, change the value of the URL to include HTTPS instead of HTTP, or use a relative URL.</p>
Web server	<code>http://computer_name</code>	The Web server used by IBM Cognos Visualizer.

### computer name

Object hierarchy: IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters.Server Configuration.IBM Cognos Visualizer.Visualizer Server Group.computer name

Property	Default value	Description
Name	The name of your computer	The name of the computer that is an IBM Cognos Visualizer server

Property	Default value	Description
Port	8060	The IBM Cognos Visualizer inter-server communications port
Protocol	Cogx2	The inter-server protocol



---

# Chapter 27: Configuration Files

---

Configuration Manager creates some files automatically, and you can create others. Use the following files to configure other computers, configure your own computer, or troubleshoot error messages:

- [server configuration file](#)
- [configuration specification files](#)
- [environment script files](#)
- [installation log files](#)
- [configuration log files](#)
- [configuration error log files](#)
- [SQL log files](#)

## Server Configuration Files

A server configuration file (*cern.csx*) contains server configuration information so that gateway components can communicate with their associated servers (dispatchers). This file is automatically created from the Configuration Wizard.

You choose to create a default configuration or import an existing configuration.

- the Configuration Manager graphical user interface ([p. 35](#))
- the Configuration Manager command line interface

You apply the configuration settings for the IBM Cognos Shared.Runtime Parameters section of the object hierarchy.

The server configuration file contains information about gateways and dispatchers only. It does not contain information about directory servers, data stores, or other components.

Use a server configuration file to apply a common server group definition to every computer in the IBM® Cognos® application. For more information, see "[Configuring IBM Cognos Server Groups](#)" ([p. 16](#)).

You can import ([p. 36](#)) server configuration files using Configuration Manager. You can also specify that server configuration files are encrypted ([p. 34](#)).

## Configuration Specification Files

You can create a configuration specification file (*.ccs*) to record the properties of the IBM® Cognos® components you installed on your computer. A configuration specification file is helpful when managing multiple configurations. You can transfer and then open the *.ccs* file on a different computer to use the same configuration values. When you transfer a *.ccs* file to a different computer,

some modifications are required in the configuration, such as changing the computer name. Also, if you make a configuration error, you can revert to a previously saved configuration ([p. 25](#)).

For more information, see ["Save a Configuration in a File" \(p. 29\)](#).

The configuration specification file is an XML file intended for use with Configuration Manager. We recommend that you do not edit configuration specification files.

## Environment Script Files

An IBM® Cognos® environment script (.ccp) is a file you create and use to configure some or all components after unattended installations. The .ccp script specifies which components you want to install on a remote computer, and how to configure them.

You can usually combine an environment script file (.ccp) with a transfer specification file (.ats) in a batch file. You can then run the batch file during an unattended installation. For more information about unattended installations, see the *Installation Guide* for your product.

To create a .ccp file, you need to export your configuration as a script ([p. 30](#)).

Like a [configuration specification file](#), an environment script file captures the current Configuration Manager view. However, the environment script is a text file containing commands to be read by the command line interface ([p. 39](#)) during an unattended batch process.

The configuration specification is an XML file that you can open in Configuration Manager.

## Installation Log Files

Installation log files contain information about events that occurred during the installation of your IBM® Cognos® components. You use installation log files to make decisions when you configure components.

For every IBM Cognos component you install, an installation log file is created. These files contain specific component information. For example, the installation log file for Access Manager contains information about

- the drive where the component was installed
- the required and available drive space
- the user name
- the company name
- the type of installation, default or custom
- shortcut locations

The name of the installation log file is derived from the date and time that the installation occurred. By default, the installation log files appear in the *installation\_location*\instlog folder in the following format:

tl-product name-date, yyyymmdd-bhmm.txt

## Configuration Log Files

Configuration log files contain information about events that occurred during the configuration of your IBM® Cognos® components. You use these files to track your actions and troubleshoot problems.

A configuration log file is created every time you configure a component. Each log contains information about

- the name of the computer being configured
- the date and time of configuration
- the name of the component being configured
- the configuration action
- the state of the action
- the old and new configuration values
- the user performing the configuration action

The name of the configuration log file is derived from the date and time that the configuration occurred. By default, the configuration log files appear in the *installation\_location\instlog* folder in the following format:

*cfa-yyyymmdd\_hhmm.txt*

**Tip:** You can change the location by clicking the **Location** tab of the Preferences dialog box (**File, Preferences**).

## Configuration Error Log Files

Configuration error log files are automatically created when a problem occurs during configuration of your IBM® Cognos® components.

Error messages appear in the **Results** window of Configuration Manager. You can use Configuration Manager to find the source of the error ([p. 26](#)).

For more information about troubleshooting, see the *Installation Guide* for your product.

The name of the configuration error log file is derived from the date and time that the configuration occurred. By default, the configuration error log files appear in the *installation\_location\instlog* folder in the following format:

*cfe-yyyymmdd\_hhmm.txt*

**Tip:** You can change the location by clicking the **Location** tab of the Preferences dialog box (**File, Preferences**).

## SQL Log Files

Structured Query Language (SQL) log files provide an additional logging facility for Impromptu® Web Reports (IWR). IWR administrators and report creators wanting additional SQL information

when troubleshooting or debugging their reports can specify a report name using Upfront while selecting a directory for the storage of the report using the Logfile Location field in the IWR Log - Properties window. These log reports are enabled or disabled on a report-by-report basis. The IWR administrator can log the text of the SQL query or queries used in a report. Each record in the SQL log file contains several fields with information about the

- date and time when the SQL was generated (the StartTime column with a format of YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS)
- user who ran the report (the User column)
- ID of the report that was run (the ReportID column)
- name of the report that was run (the ReportName column)
- IBM® Cognos® SQL passed to universal data access (UDA) layer (the CognosSQL column)

All of the information in these fields with the exception of the StartTime column is presented in double-quote characters with commas separating each field. When one of the quoted fields contains a double-quoted character, it will be written as two double-quoted character, one following the other, as is conventional for import into Microsoft® Excel.

**Note:** We recommend that you enable SQL logging only when debugging reports. When debugging is complete, disable this feature. SQL logging rapidly generates large numbers of log files that can cause disk space issues. System administrators should closely monitor disk space usage while SQL logging is enabled.

---

## Appendix A: Cerlocale Schema Elements

---

All IBM® Cognos® Series 7 Version 4 installations include a locale format configuration file, named cerlocale.xml. The cerlocale.xml file and the related schema file, cerlocale.xsd, are UTF-8 encoded XML files.

For some environments, you may want to modify the locale format definitions. Because the locale format configuration file is XML format, you can use an XML editor to modify format definitions. You should use an XML editor that includes a validating parser.

For more information about managing and editing the cerlocale.xml file, see ["Managing Locale Formats" \(p. 130\)](#).

All elements are described in the cerlocale.xsd file. We recommend that you do not edit the schema file.

### Cerlocale Schema Elements

All locales use the same element hierarchy:

Locale

FormattingInfo

NumericFormats

NumberFormats

CurrencyFormats

DateTimeFormats

DateFormats

TimeFormats

The following tables describe each element.

### Locale Information

#### Locale Identifiers

Name	Description
Locale ID	<p>Specifies the locale using the two-character ISO 639 language code and the two-character ISO 3166 country name code.</p> <p>For example, fr-be specifies the language is French and the country is Belgium.</p>

Name	Description
Language	Describes the language with optional qualifiers. For example, French (Belgium) describes fr-be
HexID	Specifies the hexadecimal identifier for the language.  For information about these identifiers, see your Windows® documentation.

## Data Formats

### General Formats

Name	Description
SList	Specifies the character used to separate list items.

### Numeric Formats

#### General Formats

Name	Description
SNegativeSign	Specifies the character used for the negative sign for both numbers and currencies.

#### Number Formats

Name	Description
SDecimal	Specifies the character used as the decimal separator.
SThousand	Specifies the character used to separate groups of digits to the left of the decimal.

Name	Description
SGrouping	<p>Specifies the size for each group of digits to the left of the decimal in numeric formats. Groupings are assigned starting from the decimal and separated by a semicolon (;). For example, for the number 1, 234, 567.00, SGrouping = 3;2;2 displays as 12, 34, 567</p> <p>If the last value in the SGrouping is 0, then the group size repeats based on the second last value. For example, the number 123, 456, 789.00 displays as</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 123, 456, 789 if SGrouping = 3;0</li> <li>• 12, 34, 56, 789 if SGrouping = 3;2;0</li> </ul>
IIZero	<p>Specifies whether leading zeros are used in decimal values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 = no leading zeros</li> </ul> <p>For example, .7</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 = leading zeros</li> </ul> <p>For example, 0.7</p>
IDigits	<p>Specifies the number of digits to the right of the decimal separator in numeric formats. You can specify a value from 0 to 999.</p> <p>For example, the number 123, 456, 789.00 displays as</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 123, 456, 789.00 if IDigits = 2</li> <li>• 123, 456, 789.000000 if IDigits = 6</li> </ul>
INegNumber	<p>Specifies the format used for negative numbers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 = (1.1)</li> <li>• 1 = -1.1</li> <li>• 2 = - 1.1</li> <li>• 3 = 1.1-</li> <li>• 4 = 1.1 -</li> </ul>

## Currency Formats

Name	Description
SCurrency	<p>Specifies the default monetary symbol for the locale.</p> <p>The list of valid monetary symbols is contained in the <code>i18n_res.xml</code> file. This file is installed to <i>installation_location</i>\cern\bin and <i>installation_location</i>\cern\cgi-bin.</p>
SMonDecimalSep	Specifies the character used as the decimal separator.
SMonThousandSep	Specifies the character used to group digits to the left of the decimal for monetary values.
SMonGrouping	<p>Specifies the size for each group of digits to the left of the decimal in currency formats. Groupings are assigned starting from the decimal and separated by a semicolon (;). For example, for the currency value \$1, 234, 567.00, SMonGrouping = 3;2;2 displays as \$12, 34, 567</p> <p>If the last value in the SMonGrouping is 0, then the group size repeats based on the second last value. For example, the currency value \$123, 456, 789.00 displays as</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• \$123, 456, 789 if SMonGrouping = 3;0</li> <li>• \$12, 34, 56, 789 if SMonGrouping = 3;2;0</li> </ul>
IIntlCurrDigits	<p>Specifies the number digits to the right of the decimal separator for the international monetary format.</p> <p>This value is used when the format contains the three-character international currency abbreviation (for example, EUR) instead of the symbol.</p> <p>You can specify a value from 0 to 999.</p>
ICurrDigits	<p>Specifies the number of digits to the right of the decimal separator in currency formats. You can specify a value from 0 to 999.</p> <p>For example, the currency value \$123, 456, 789.00 displays as</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• \$123, 456, 789.00 if ICurrDigits = 2</li> <li>• \$123, 456, 789.000000 if ICurrDigits = 6</li> </ul>

Name	Description
IPosSymPrecedes	<p>Specifies the position of the monetary symbol for positive monetary values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 = before the value For example, \$2.99</li> <li>0 = after the value For example, 2.99\$</li> </ul>
IPosSepBySpace	<p>Specifies the separation of the monetary symbol for positive values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 = a space between the symbol and the value For example, \$ 1,00</li> <li>0 = no space between the symbol and the value For example, \$1,00</li> </ul>
INegSymPrecedes	<p>Specifies the position of the monetary symbol for negative values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 = before the value For example, -\$2.99 or (\$2.99)</li> <li>0 = after the value For example, 2.99\$- or (2.99\$)</li> </ul>
INegSepBySpace	<p>Specifies the separation of the monetary symbol for negative values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 = a space between the symbol and the value</li> <li>0 = no space between the symbol and the value</li> </ul>
INegSignPosn	<p>Specifies the format used for negative monetary values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = parenthese surrond the amount and monetary symbol</li> <li>1 = the sign precedes the amount</li> <li>2 = the sign follows the amount</li> <li>3 = the sign precedes the monetary symbol</li> <li>4 = the sign follows the monetary symbol</li> </ul>

## Date and Time Formats

For more information about characters used in date and time formats, see ["Format Pictures and Restricted Values" \(p. 334\)](#).

### General Formats

Name	Description
Prompt_SShortDateTime	Specifies the short format string used for prompting the user for a date and time in Impromptu® Web Reports and Impromptu.
Prompt_SShortInterval	Specifies the short format string used when prompting a user for interval information in Impromptu Web Reports and Impromptu.

### Date Formats

Name	Description
SDate	Specifies the character used as the date separator.
IDate	Specifies the order for the short format for date. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 = Month-Day-Year</li> <li>• 1 = Day-Month-Year</li> <li>• 2 = Year-Month-Day</li> </ul>
SLongDate	Specifies the long format for date that will appear in reports.  Characters enclosed with single quotes are displayed as text. For example, in Spanish, <SLongDate>dddd, dd' de 'MMMM' de 'yyyy</SLongDate> displays as Lunes, 09 de Enero de 2004  For more information, see <a href="#">"Format Pictures and Restricted Values" (p. 334)</a> .
SShortDate	Specifies the short format for date that will appear in reports.  For example, M/d/yyyy displays as 12/25/2004
Prompt_SShortDate	Specifies the short format used when prompting the user for date information in Impromptu Web Reports and Impromptu.

Name	Description
SDayName(x), where x is a number from 1 to 7	Specifies the full name for the day of the week. For example, <SDayName4>jeudi</SDayName4>
SAbbrevDayName(x), where x is a number from 1 to 7	Specifies the abbreviated name for the day of the week. For example, <SAbbrevDayName4>jeu.</SAbbrevDayName4>
SMonthName(x), where x is a number from 1 to 13	Specifies the full name for the month. If necessary, you can specify the full name for a 13th month. For example, <SMonthName11>November</SMonthName11>
SAbbrevMonthName(x), where x is a number from 1 to 13	Specifies the abbreviated name for the month. If necessary, you can specify the abbreviated name for 13th month. For example, <SAbbrevMonthName11>Nov</SAbbrevMonthName11>

## Time Formats

Name	Description
S1159	Specifies the characters used to indicate AM when using a 12-hour clock.
SAbbrev_1159	Specifies the abbreviated version of S1159.
S2359	Specifies the characters used to indicate PM when using a 12-hour clock.
SAbbrev_2359	Specifies the abbreviated version of S2359.
STime	Specifies the character used as the time separator.
ITime	Specifies the time format. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = 12-hour clock</li> <li>1 = 24-hour clock</li> </ul>
ITLZero	Specifies whether leading zeros are used for time values. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 = no leading zeros</li> <li>1 = leading zeros</li> </ul>

Name	Description
Prompt_STimeFormat	<p>Specifies the format used when prompting a user for time information.</p> <p>When using a 24-hour clock, do not include an AM and PM specifier, for example, H:mm:ss</p> <p>When using a 12-hour clock, include an AM and PM specifier, for example, h:mm tt</p>

## Format Pictures and Restricted Values

Format	Description
d	Represents the day of the month without leading zeros for single digit days. For example, 3 or 25.
dd	Represents the day of the month with leading zeros for single digit days. For example, 03 or 25.
ddd	Represents the day of the week as specified by SAbbrevDayName[x].
dddd	Represents the day of the week as specified by SDayName[x].
M	Represents the month without leading zeros for single digit months. For example, 1 or 12.
MM	Represents the month with leading zeros for single digit months. For example, 01 or 12.
MMM	Represents the month as specified by SAbbrevMonthName[x].
MMMM	Represents the month as specified by SMonthName[x].
y	Represents the year using the last digit.
yy	Represents the year using the last two digits.
yyyy	Represents the year using four digits.
gg	Represents the period or era string.
h	Represents hours in a 12-hour clock without leading zeros for single-digit hours.

Format	Description
hh	Represents hours in a 12-hour clock with leading zeros for single-digit hours.
H	Represents hours in a 24-hour clock without leading zeros for single-digit hours.
HH	Represents hours in a 24-hour clock with leading zeros for single-digit hours.
m	Represents minutes without leading zeros for single-digit minutes.
mm	Represents minutes with leading zeros for single-digit minutes.
s	Represents seconds without leading zeros for single-digit seconds.
ss	Represents seconds with leading zeros for single-digit seconds.
t	Represents the abbreviated AM and PM specifier. Values are the same as SAbbrev_1159 and SAbbrev_S2359.
tt	Represents the AM and PM specifier. Values are the same as S1159 and S2359.
<space>	Any blank defined within a format is included in the final display value.
'string'	Characters enclosed with single quotes are displayed as text. For example, in Spanish, <SLongDate>dddd, dd' de 'MMMM' de 'yyyy</SLongDate> displays as Lunes, 09 de Enero de 2004
9	Used in Prompt_SShortInterval to specify the number of days in an interval.  For example, <Prompt_SShortInterval>9 H:mm:ss</Prompt_SShortInterval>
0	Used in Prompt_SShortInterval to specify the fractional part of the seconds.  For example, <Prompt_SShortInterval>9 H:mm:ss'.0</Prompt_SShortInterval>



---

# Index

---

## Symbols

.lae, [82](#)

## A

accessibility support

enabling, [128](#)

Access Manager

base distinguished name (DN), [231](#)

configuring directory servers, [229](#)

default namespace, [232](#)

directory servers, [229](#)

gateway object hierarchy locations, [162](#)

Runtime, [84](#), [238](#)

ticket service settings, [241](#)

unrestricted user distinguished name (DN), [231](#)

unrestricted user passwords, [231](#)

Access Manager Administration

server properties, [310](#)

Access Manager Logon

server properties, [309](#)

Access Manager Server, [85](#)

alternate gateways, [120](#)

authentication service, [85](#)

mixed version installations, [107](#)

object hierarchy locations in PowerPlay Transformer, [199](#)

ticket service, [85](#)

upgrading, [107](#)

Active Directory Application Mode (ADAM)

configuring as directory server, [79](#)

adding

servers to a server group, [97](#)

servers to existing installation, [97](#)

Administration

configuring, [137](#)

advanced view

properties, [23](#)

Alerts/Notifications

default ports in UNIX, [170](#)

default ports in Windows, [169](#)

aliases

changing existing, [103](#)

alternate gateways

Access Manager Server, [120](#)

configuring Apache module gateways, [125](#)

configuring ISAPI gateways, [121](#)

configuring NSAPI gateways, [122](#)

IBM Cognos Metrics Manager, [121](#)

IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [119](#)

Impromptu Web Reports, [119](#)

NoticeCast, [121](#)

Notification, [121](#)

PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [119](#)

Upfront, [120](#)

Upfront File Manager, [120](#)

Apache HTTP Server

changing settings, [127](#)

Apache module gateways

configuring, [125](#)

Apache Tomcat

IBM Cognos Metrics Manager properties, [297](#)

application servers

IBM Cognos Metrics Manager properties, [297](#)

IBM Cognos Web Services properties, [275](#)

Apply command, [47](#)

applying

configuration changes, [27](#)

authentication

alternate configuration, [85](#)

configuring web authentication, [85](#)

default configuration, [85](#)

web, [85](#)

authentication service, [85](#)

authentication sources

specifying, [82](#)

## B

base distinguished name (DN) property, [83](#)

Access Manager, [231](#)

batch files

preparing, [31](#)

unattended installation, [31](#)

## C

caching, [84](#)

cerlocale.xml, [130](#)

editing, [131](#)

cerlocale schema elements, [327](#)

cern.csx files

IBM Cognos Web Services, [274](#)

changing, [131](#)

component locations, [24](#)

configuration values, [21](#)

current configuration, [44](#)

port numbers, [24](#)

property values, [24](#)

cognos.ini file

mixed version installations, [107](#)

upgrading location of, [107](#)

command line

startup options, [41](#)

command line interface, [39](#)

commands, [44](#)

syntax rules, [44](#)

Command Processor

interactive mode, [39](#)

rules, [44](#)

running, [39](#)

startup options, [41](#)

commands, [45](#)

Apply, [47](#)

changing the configuration, [44](#)

Create, [48](#)

Delete, [48](#)

Describe, [49](#)

Encrypt, [50](#)

Errors, [51](#)

Exit, [51](#)

Find, [51](#)

FindNext, [53](#)

GetPreferences, [54](#)

GoToLink, [55](#)

List, [56](#)

New, [57](#)

ObtainComputer, [58](#)

OpenCurrent, [59](#)

OpenFile, [59](#)

Report, [60](#)

RestoreLink, [61](#)

Results, [62](#)

RevertSaved, [63](#)

Save, [64](#)

Script, [65](#)

Select, [66](#)

Set, [66](#)

SetDefault, [67](#)

SetPreferences, [69](#)

Specify, [69](#)

Start, [70](#)

Stop, [71](#)

Upgrade, [72](#)

Use, [73](#)

Validate, [73](#)

Wizard, [74](#)

complex server environment

configuring, [90](#)

components

changing locations, [24](#)

locations in custom installations, [87](#)

object hierarchy locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer  
Web, [162](#)

object hierarchy locations in Impromptu Web  
Reports, [149](#)

object hierarchy locations in NoticeCast, [171](#)

object hierarchy locations in PowerPlay Enterprise  
Server, [193](#)

object hierarchy locations in PowerPlay Trans-  
former, [199](#)

stopping services, [28](#)

components tab

using, [19](#)

Computer property, [83](#)

computers

configuring, [27](#)

Configcp command, [39](#)

configuration

applying changes, [27](#)

error log files, [325](#)

exporting to a script, [30](#)

IBM Cognos Web Services properties, [277](#)

log files, [325](#)

reverting to saved, [25](#)

validating changes, [25](#)

- configuration files
  - mixed version installations, 106
  - saving, 29
  - transferring, 31
- Configuration Manager, 15
  - command line interface, 39
  - components tab, 19
  - exiting, 30
  - Explorer window icons, 19
  - graphical user interface, 19
  - managing server configuration files, 90
  - navigating object hierarchy, 42
  - server configuration tab, 31
  - specifying component locations, 90
  - stopping services, 28
- configuration specification files, 323
  - opening, 22
- configuration values
  - changing, 21
- Configuration wizard, 23
- Configure command, 39
- configuring
  - additional Access Manager Servers, 100
  - additional IBM Cognos Visualizer servers, 99
  - additional Impromptu Web Reports servers, 98
  - additional PowerPlay Enterprise Server servers, 98
  - additional Upfront servers, 100
  - administration settings, 137
  - component locations for custom installations, 87
  - Contributor OLAP Data Access, 105
  - directory server on UNIX, 78
  - examples of custom installations, 91
  - IBM Cognos Finance, 217
  - IBM Cognos tools, 257
  - IBM Cognos Web Services, 273
  - identifying remote computers, 29
  - IIS server, 218
  - Impromptu Web Reports, 147
  - local computers, 27
  - locale formats, 130, 131
  - mixed version environments, 104
  - NoticeCast, 169
  - object hierarchy component locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, 162
  - object hierarchy component locations in Impromptu Web Reports, 149
  - object hierarchy component locations in NoticeCast, 171
  - object hierarchy component locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, 193
  - object hierarchy component locations in PowerPlay Transformer, 199
  - PowerPlay Enterprise Server, 191
  - property values, 84
  - servers, 16
  - Upfront, 261
  - Upfront File Manager, 269
  - using server configuration files, 90
  - Web authentication on UNIX, 86
  - Web authentication on Windows, 85
- connections
  - OLAP data sources, 203
- Contributor
  - configuring OLAP Data Access, 105
- copying
  - configuration files, 31
- Create command, 48
- creating
  - environment script files, 40
  - new configurations, 22
  - server configuration files, 35, 94
  - server groups, 32, 92
- CSS character checking
  - enabling in IBM Cognos Application Firewall, 248
- current configuration
  - opening, 21
- custom installations
  - Access Manager Server locations in PowerPlay Transformer, 199
  - component locations, 87
  - configuring complex server environment, 90
  - configuring distributed servers, 86
  - directory server locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, 162
  - directory server locations in Impromptu Web Reports, 149
  - directory server locations in NoticeCast, 171
  - directory server locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, 193
  - directory server locations in PowerPlay Transformer, 199
  - examples of configurations, 91

- gateway locations in Access Manager, [162](#)
- gateway locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [162](#)
- gateway locations in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
- gateway locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [193](#)
- managing server configuration files, [90](#)
- ticket service locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [162](#)
- ticket service locations in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
- ticket service locations in NoticeCast, [171](#)
- ticket service locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [193](#)
- Upfront gateway locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [162](#)
- Upfront gateway locations in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
- Upfront gateway locations in NoticeCast, [171](#)
- Upfront gateway locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [193](#)
- Upfront gateway locations in PowerPlay Transformer, [199](#)
- cws.properties files
  - IBM Cognos Web Services properties, [274](#)

## D

- data access
  - OLAP, [203](#)
- data store
  - Impromptu Web Reports database properties, [151](#)
  - NoticeCast settings, [172](#)
  - Upfront properties, [261](#)
- DB2 OLAP driver
  - properties, [205](#)
- DecisionStream Designer
  - Network Services properties, [209](#)
  - Network Services SOAP server properties, [210](#)
  - settings, [209](#)
- DecisionStream Runtime
  - properties, [213](#)
- default namespace property, [83](#)
  - Access Manager settings, [232](#)
- default ports
  - IBM Cognos Metrics Manager, [295](#)

- default settings
  - locale formats, [130](#)
- default values
  - setting, [25](#)
- Delete command, [48](#)
- Deployment Manager
  - folder location properties, [137](#)
- Describe command, [49](#)
- directory servers
  - configuring, [82](#)
  - configuring on UNIX, [78](#)
  - configuring remotely, [229](#)
  - object hierarchy locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [162](#)
  - object hierarchy locations in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
  - object hierarchy locations in NoticeCast, [171](#)
  - object hierarchy locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [193](#)
  - object hierarchy locations in PowerPlay Transformer, [199](#)
  - timeout, [83](#)
- dispatchers
  - IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server properties, [164](#)
  - PowerPlay Enterprise Server settings, [194](#)
- distributed installations
  - IBM Cognos Metrics Manager, [296](#)
  - settings in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [162](#)
  - settings in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
  - settings in NoticeCast, [171](#)
  - settings in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [193](#)
  - settings in PowerPlay Transformer, [199](#)
- DOS command window
  - Configuration Manager, [39](#)

## E

- editing
  - locale formats, [131](#)
- enabling
  - accessibility support, [128](#)
- encoding standard for server products, [133](#)
- Encrypt command, [50](#)
- encrypting
  - server configuration files, [34](#)
- environment script files, [324](#)
  - creating, [40](#)

- exporting, [30](#)
- errors
  - finding the source, [26](#)
  - resolving in IBM Cognos Finance, [218](#)
- Errors command, [51](#)
- Esc key
  - using with select command, [42](#)
- event server
  - Upfront properties, [265](#)
- Exit command, [51](#)
- exiting
  - Configuration Manager, [30](#)
- Explorer window
  - icons, [19](#), [32](#)
- exporting
  - configuration to script, [30](#)

## F

- failover
  - adding additional servers, [97](#)
- Find command, [51](#)
- FindNext command, [53](#)

## G

- gateways
  - default for server groups, [16](#)
  - IBM Cognos Metrics Manager properties, [306](#)
  - IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server properties, [166](#)
  - Impromptu Web Reports properties, [154](#)
  - object hierarchy locations in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
  - PowerPlay Enterprise Server properties, [196](#)
  - Upfront File Manager properties, [269](#)
  - Upfront properties, [262](#)
- GetPreferences command, [54](#)
- GoToLink command, [55](#)
- graphical user interface
  - creating server groups, [32](#)
  - Explorer window, [19](#)
  - Properties window, [19](#)
  - Results window, [19](#)
  - windows, [19](#)

## H

- hierarchy
  - objects in Configuration Manager, [87](#)

- Hyperion Essbase driver
  - settings, [205](#)

## I

- IBM Cognos Analyst
  - settings, [223](#)
- IBM Cognos Application Firewall
  - CSS character checking, [248](#)
  - general properties, [246](#)
  - logging properties, [249](#)
- IBM Cognos Contributor
  - settings, [224](#)
- IBM Cognos Finance
  - configuring, [217](#)
  - Excel properties, [217](#)
  - Network API Service, [219](#)
  - resolving error messages, [218](#)
- IBM Cognos Metrics Manager
  - alternate gateways, [121](#)
  - Apache Tomcat properties, [297](#)
  - application host properties, [307](#)
  - application server properties, [297](#)
  - configuring distributed components, [296](#)
  - DB2 data store properties, [303](#)
  - default ports, [295](#)
  - gateway properties, [306](#)
  - gateway URI property, [299](#)
  - general properties, [299](#)
  - logging properties, [304](#)
  - mandatory changes, [295](#)
  - Microsoft SQL Server data store properties, [305](#)
  - Oracle data store properties, [306](#)
- IBM Cognos OLAP
  - default ports in UNIX, [192](#)
  - default ports in Windows, [191](#)
- IBM Cognos services
  - starting, [28](#)
  - stopping, [28](#)
- IBM Cognos tools
  - configuring, [257](#)
- IBM Cognos Visualizer
  - general properties, [159](#)
  - server administration properties, [137](#)
  - server properties, [319](#)
- IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server
  - alternate gateways, [119](#)

- configuring distributed components, [162](#)
  - configuring Web aliases, [103](#)
  - default ports in UNIX, [162](#)
  - default ports in Windows, [161](#)
  - dispatcher properties, [164](#)
  - gateway locations, [89](#)
  - gateway object hierarchy locations, [162](#)
  - gateway properties, [166](#)
- IBM Cognos Web Services
  - application server properties, [275](#)
  - cern.csx files, [274](#)
  - configuration properties, [277](#)
  - cws.properties files, [274](#)
  - developer shortcut properties, [291](#)
  - logging properties, [279](#)
  - multiple server groups properties, [280](#)
  - port properties, [275](#)
  - server properties, [280](#)
- IBM HTTP Server
  - changing settings, [127](#)
- icons
  - all server groups, [32](#)
  - category, [19](#)
  - category template, [19](#)
  - component, [19](#)
  - customized value, [20](#)
  - derived value, [20](#)
  - error, [20](#)
  - Explorer window, [19](#), [32](#)
  - information, [20](#)
  - linked value, [20](#)
  - local computer, [19](#)
  - product, [19](#)
  - Properties window, [20](#), [32](#)
  - remote computer, [19](#)
  - Results window, [20](#)
  - server component, [32](#)
  - server group, [32](#)
  - service, [19](#)
  - shared properties, [19](#)
  - warning, [20](#)
- identifying
  - remote computers, [29](#)
- importing
  - server configuration files, [36](#)
- Impromptu
  - accessibility properties, [143](#)
  - general properties, [143](#)
- Impromptu Administrator
  - accessibility properties, [144](#)
  - general properties, [144](#)
- Impromptu Web Reports
  - accessibility properties, [155](#)
  - administration properties, [139](#)
  - alternate gateways, [119](#)
  - auditing properties, [155](#)
  - common components, [151](#)
  - configuring distributed components, [149](#)
  - configuring Web aliases, [102](#)
  - database properties, [151](#)
  - default ports in UNIX, [148](#)
  - default ports in Windows, [148](#)
  - gateway locations, [88](#)
  - gateway properties, [154](#)
  - general properties, [156](#)
  - logging properties, [151](#), [157](#)
  - server properties, [313](#)
  - server settings, [155](#)
- installation log files
  - viewing, [324](#)
- interactive mode
  - Command Processor, [39](#)
- ISAPI gateways
  - configuring, [121](#)
- L**
- List command, [56](#)
- load balancing
  - adding additional servers, [97](#)
- local authentication export files, [82](#)
- local cache enabled property, [84](#)
- local cache file property, [84](#)
- local computers
  - configuring, [27](#)
- locale formats, [131](#)
  - cerlocale.xml, [130](#)
  - changing, [131](#)
  - configuring, [131](#)
  - default settings, [130](#)
  - descriptions, [327](#)
  - managing, [130](#)

- upgrading, [131](#)
- locale properties, [133](#)
- logging
  - IBM Cognos Metrics Manager properties, [304](#)
  - IBM Cognos Web Services properties, [279](#)
  - Impromptu Web Reports properties, [151](#)

## M

- MDL
  - save options, [200](#)
- Microsoft Excel
  - properties, [217](#)
- Microsoft OLE DB
  - OLAP driver properties, [205](#)
- Microsoft SQL Server
  - IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store properties, [305](#)
- mixed versions
  - configuring port numbers, [105](#)
  - configuring security, [106](#)
  - configuring Web aliases, [108](#)
  - managing Access Manager Server, [107](#)
  - managing configuration files, [106](#)
- multiple configuration
  - specification files, [323](#)
- multiple server group properties
  - IBM Cognos Web Services, [280](#)

## N

- navigating
  - object hierarchy, [43](#)
- navigation commands
  - describe, [42](#)
  - find, [43](#)
  - list, [42](#)
  - select, [42](#)
- NETD Port property, [201](#)
- New command, [57](#)
- new configurations
  - creating, [22](#)
- NoticeCast
  - alternate gateways, [121](#)
  - configuring, [169](#)
  - configuring distributed components, [171](#)
  - data store properties, [172](#)
  - server properties, [178](#), [184](#), [316](#)

- shared properties, [184](#)
- NoticeCast Administration
  - configuring, [139](#)
  - logging properties, [139](#)
  - properties, [140](#)
- Notification
  - alternate gateways, [121](#)
- NSAPI gateways
  - configuring, [122](#)

## O

- object hierarchy
  - Access Manager Server locations in PowerPlay Transformer, [199](#)
  - directory server locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [162](#)
  - directory server locations in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
  - directory server locations in NoticeCast, [171](#)
  - directory server locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [193](#)
  - directory server locations in PowerPlay Transformer, [199](#)
  - gateway locations in Access Manager, [162](#)
  - gateway locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [162](#)
  - gateway locations in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
  - gateway locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [193](#)
  - locating properties, [42](#)
  - navigating, [43](#)
  - ticket service locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web, [162](#)
  - ticket service locations in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
  - ticket service locations in NoticeCast, [171](#)
  - ticket service locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [193](#)
  - Upfront gateway locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [162](#)
  - Upfront gateway locations in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
  - Upfront gateway locations in NoticeCast, [171](#)
  - Upfront gateway locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [193](#)

- Upfront gateway locations in PowerPlay Trans-  
former, [199](#)
- ObjectIDOutput, [200](#)
- ObtainComputer command, [58](#)
- OLAP
  - driver properties, [205](#)
  - server properties, [206](#)
- OLAP Data Access
  - configuring for Contributor, [105](#)
- OLAP server
  - properties, [206](#)
- OpenCurrent command, [59](#)
- OpenFile command, [59](#)
- opening
  - configuration specification files, [22](#)
- Oracle
  - IBM Cognos Metrics Manager data store proper-  
ties, [306](#)
- P**
- Port/SSL Port property, [83](#)
- port numbers
  - changing, [24](#)
  - mixed version installations, [105](#)
- ports
  - Alerts/Notifications default in UNIX, [170](#)
  - Alerts/Notifications default in WIndows, [169](#)
  - default for server groups, [17](#)
  - IBM Cognos Metrics Manager, [295](#)
  - IBM Cognos OLAP default in UNIX, [192](#)
  - IBM Cognos OLAP default in Windows, [191](#)
  - IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server default in  
UNIX, [162](#)
  - IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server default in Win-  
dows, [161](#)
  - IBM Cognos Web Services properties, [275](#)
  - Impromptu Web Reports default in UNIX, [148](#)
  - Impromptu Web Reports default in Windows, [148](#)
  - PowerPlay Transformer default for Windows, [199](#)
  - PowerPlay Transformer default in UNIX, [199](#)
- PowerGrid
  - configuring, [201](#)
- PowerPlay
  - configuring, [187](#)
  - general properties, [187](#)
  - server properties, [318](#)
- PowerPlay data services
  - settings, [252](#)
  - UDA properties, [253](#)
- PowerPlay Enterprise Server
  - accessibility properties, [194](#)
  - administration properties, [141](#)
  - alternate gateways, [119](#)
  - configuring, [191](#)
  - configuring distributed components, [193](#)
  - configuring Web aliases, [102](#)
  - dispatcher settings, [194](#)
  - gateway locations, [89](#)
  - gateway object hierarchy locations, [193](#)
  - gateway properties, [196](#)
  - general properties, [194](#)
- PowerPlay Transformation Server
  - configuring, [199](#)
  - general properties (UNIX), [200](#)
- PowerPlay Transformer
  - configuring distributed components, [199](#)
  - default ports for Windows, [199](#)
  - default ports in UNIX, [199](#)
  - MDL Save Options properties (Windows), [200](#)
  - PowerGrid Configuration properties (Windows), [201](#)
- PowerPrompts
  - configuring Web aliases, [102](#)
  - properties, [257](#)
- properties
  - base distinguished name (DN), [83](#)
  - changing values, [24](#)
  - Command Processor, [44](#)
  - Computer, [83](#)
  - configuring, [84](#)
  - DecisionStream Designer, [209](#)
  - DecisionStream Runtime, [213](#)
  - default namespace, [83](#)
  - Deployment Manager folder locations, [137](#)
  - finding names, [23](#)
  - IBM Cognos Visualizer, [159](#)
  - IBM Cognos Web Services, [274](#)
  - local cache enabled, [84](#)
  - local cache file, [84](#)
  - locale, [133](#)
  - Port/SSL Port, [83](#)
  - PowerPlay data services, [253](#)
  - PowerPlay Enterprise - Server Administration, [141](#)

- PowerPlay Transformation Server, [200](#)
- PowerPrompts, [257](#)
- Scheduler, [258](#)
- SSL certificate database, [84](#)
- SSL enabled, [84](#)
- standard and advanced views, [23](#)
- timeout, [83](#)
- Upfront Server - Administration, [141](#)
- Properties window, [19](#), [31](#)
  - icons, [20](#)
- property tables
  - NoticeCast, [139](#)

## R

- relative URLs
  - configuring, [117](#)
- Report command, [60](#)
- reports
  - generating, [27](#)
- RestoreLink command, [61](#)
- Results command, [62](#)
- Results window, [19](#)
- reverting to
  - saved configurations, [25](#)
- RevertSaved command, [63](#)
- rules
  - Command Processor, [44](#)
- running
  - Command Processor, [39](#)
- Runtime
  - Access Manager properties, [238](#)
  - authentication sources, [82](#)

## S

- SAP BW OLE DB for OLAP driver
  - properties, [206](#)
- Save command, [64](#)
- saving
  - configuration files, [29](#)
- Scheduler
  - properties, [258](#)
- schema version property
  - configuring in custom installation, [76](#)
- Script command, [65](#)
- script files
  - creating, [40](#)

- scripting
  - Configuration Manager, [39](#)
- security
  - configuring for mixed versions, [106](#)
  - data, [82](#)
- Select command, [66](#)
- server configuration files
  - creating, [35](#), [94](#)
  - encrypting, [34](#)
  - importing, [36](#)
- server configuration tab
  - Explorer window, [31](#)
  - Properties window, [31](#)
- server groups
  - Access Manager Administration, [310](#)
  - Access Manager Logon, [309](#)
  - adding servers, [33](#)
  - creating, [32](#), [92](#)
  - default gateways, [16](#)
  - default ports, [17](#)
  - diagram of example, [17](#)
  - IBM Cognos Visualizer, [319](#)
  - IBM Cognos Web Services, [280](#)
  - Impromptu Web Reports, [313](#)
  - NoticeCast, [316](#)
  - PowerPlay, [318](#)
  - Upfront, [311](#), [312](#)
- server properties
  - Access Manager Administration, [310](#)
  - Access Manager Logon, [309](#)
  - IBM Cognos Visualizer, [319](#)
  - IBM Cognos Web Services, [280](#)
  - Impromptu Web Reports, [313](#)
  - NoticeCast, [316](#)
  - PowerPlay, [318](#)
  - Upfront, [311](#)
  - Upfront File Manager, [312](#)
- servers
  - adding additional, [97](#)
  - adding to a server group, [33](#), [97](#)
  - configuring, [16](#)
  - configuring IIS, [218](#)
  - Impromptu Web Reports settings, [155](#)
  - NoticeCast settings, [178](#), [184](#)
- services
  - starting, [28](#)

- stopping, [28](#)
  - Set command, [66](#)
  - SetDefault command, [67](#)
  - SetPreferences command, [69](#)
  - setting
    - items to default values, [25](#)
  - settings
    - Access Manager directory servers, [229](#)
    - DecisionStream Designer, [209](#)
    - IBM Cognos tools, [257](#)
    - OLAP data access, [203](#)
    - PowerPlay data services, [252](#)
    - UDA, [253](#)
    - Windows Common Logon Server, [255](#)
  - shared components
    - configuring, [133](#)
    - locale properties, [133](#)
    - location properties, [133](#)
    - rendition properties, [135](#)
    - Runtime parameters properties, [136](#)
    - server properties, [136](#)
  - Specify command, [69](#)
  - SQL log files, [325](#)
  - SSL certificate database property, [84](#)
  - SSL enabled property, [84](#)
  - SSL Port property, [83](#)
  - standard view
    - properties, [23](#)
  - Start command, [70](#)
  - starting
    - IBM Cognos services, [28](#)
  - Stop command, [71](#)
  - stopping
    - IBM Cognos services, [28](#)
  - Sun Java System Web server
    - changing settings, [123](#)
  - syntax rules, [44](#)
- T**
- ticket service, [85](#)
    - Access Manager settings, [241](#)
    - object hierarchy locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [162](#)
    - object hierarchy locations in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
    - object hierarchy locations in NoticeCast, [171](#)
  - object hierarchy locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [193](#)
  - timeout
    - property, [83](#)
  - transferring
    - configuration files, [31](#)
- U**
- UDA
    - settings, [253](#)
  - unattended installs
    - setting up, [31](#)
  - UNIX
    - Access Manager, [84](#)
    - default ports in Alerts/Notifications, [170](#)
    - default ports in IBM Cognos OLAP, [192](#)
    - default ports in Impromptu Web Reports, [148](#)
    - default ports in PowerPlay Transformer, [199](#)
    - locale, [133](#)
  - UNIX command line
    - Configuration Manager, [39](#)
  - unrestricted user distinguished name (DN) property
    - Access Manager, [231](#)
  - unrestricted user passwords property
    - Access Manager, [231](#)
  - Upfront
    - administration connection properties, [263](#)
    - alternate gateways, [120](#)
    - configuring, [261](#)
    - configuring Web aliases, [101](#)
    - gateway object hierarchy locations in IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [162](#)
    - gateway object hierarchy locations in Impromptu Web Reports, [149](#)
    - gateway object hierarchy locations in Notice-Cast, [171](#)
    - gateway object hierarchy locations in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [193](#)
    - gateway object hierarchy locations in PowerPlay Transformer, [199](#)
    - gateway properties, [262](#)
    - server properties, [263](#), [311](#)
    - shared properties, [267](#)
    - tracing properties, [264](#)
    - tuning dispatcher properties, [265](#)
    - tuning event server properties, [265](#)

- tuning properties, [264](#)
- Web interface properties, [266](#)
- Upfront File Manager
  - administration connection properties, [270](#)
  - alternate gateways, [120](#)
  - configuring, [269](#)
  - configuring Web aliases, [102](#)
  - gateway properties, [269](#)
  - server properties, [270](#), [312](#)
- Upfront Server - Administration
  - properties, [141](#)
- Upfront settings
  - data store, [261](#)
- Upgrade command, [72](#)
- upgrading
  - Access Manager Server, [107](#)
  - locale formats, [131](#)
  - location of cognos.ini file, [107](#)
- Use command, [73](#)

## V

- Validate command, [73](#)
- validating
  - configuration changes, [25](#)
- VerbOutput, [200](#)
- viewing
  - installation log files, [324](#)
  - SQL log files, [325](#)

## W

- Web aliases
  - changing existing, [103](#)
  - configuring in Impromptu Web Reports, [102](#)
  - configuring in PowerPlay Enterprise Server, [102](#)
  - configuring in PowerPrompts, [102](#)
  - configuring in Upfront, [101](#)
  - configuring in Upfront File Manager, [102](#)
  - mixed version installations, [108](#)
  - using non-default, [103](#)
- web authentication
  - configuring on UNIX, [86](#)
  - configuring on Windows, [85](#)
- Windows
  - locale, [133](#)
- Windows Common Logon Server
  - settings, [255](#)

- Windows default ports
  - Alerts/Notifications, [169](#)
  - IBM Cognos OLAP, [191](#)
  - IBM Cognos Visualizer Web Server, [161](#), [162](#)
  - Impromptu Web Reports, [148](#)
  - PowerPlay Transformer, [199](#)
- Windows installations
  - stopping services, [28](#)
- Wizard Command, [74](#)